MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 58

Tristrant

Eilhart von Oberg

Tristrant

Part Two: The Return and the Death

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

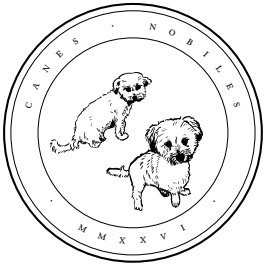


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 58 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Eilhart von Oberge, herausgegeben von Franz Lichtenstein, Quellen und Forschungen zur Sprach- und Culturgeschichte der germanischen Völker 19 (Strassburg: Karl J. Trübner, 1877), verses 4709 to 9524

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Lichtenstein numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin, and his paragraphs open with an indented verse. His text is the later redaction of Eilhart's poem, without the twelfth-century fragments his edition prints before it; its spelling, the circumflex and the quotation marks are his. The division into sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Hermit and the Return of Isalde 7
II · Arthur's Court 25
III · The Scythes by the Bed 40
IV · Karahes Besieged 56
V · The Battle before Karahes 76
VI · The Second Isalde 96
VII · The Hound in the Litter 109
VIII · Kehenis and Gymele 127
IX · Tristrant as a Leper 144
X · Piloise's Errand 158
XI · The Pilgrim 176
XII · The Leap and the Throw 187
XIII · Nampetenis and Gariole 204
XIV · The Kingdom and the Ferry 221
XV · The Squires' Ruse and the Stone 242
XVI · The Fool 256
XVII · The Death of Kehenis 277
XVIII · The Black Sail 294

The Hermit and the Return of Isalde

I

Ugrim the hermit will give Tristrant no penance unless he gives up the queen. When the potion's four years are spent, the lovers tire of the forest, go to Ugrim, and repent, and he writes to Mark on their behalf. By night Tristrant wakes the king through the wall, throws the letter in at a window, and tells him where to leave his answer; Mark knows his voice, but Tristrant rides off. Mark tells his counselors how he found the two lying in the forest, agrees to take Isalde back, but will not keep Tristrant in the land. At the meeting, dressed in poor linen the hermit gave him, Tristrant hands Isalde over after a bitter exchange with Mark, leaves her his hound, and rides away.

Eines tages reit Tristrant
On-one day rode Tristrant

dâ her den gûten man vant
where he the good man found

und wolde zû im bûze nemen.
and would from him penance take.

dô wolde her im keine gebin,
then would he to-him none give,

her begêbe den die koningîn.
he unless-gave-up then the queen.

dorch gotis willin bat her in:
for God's will asked he him:

sô quême her abe der sunde.
so would-come he off the sin.

he sprach, her en kunde
he spoke, he — could

vor dem tûfele nicht genesin,
from the devil not be-saved,

ab he lengir wolde wesin
if he longer would be

an dem unrechte.
in the wrong.

dô stunt dem gûten knechte
then stood to-the good knight

dennoch die rede nicht sô hô,
yet the speech not so high,

daz her ez wolde tûn.
that he it would do.

âne bûze he dannen reit.
without penance he thence rode.

Îsaldin he nicht vormeit
Isalde he not shunned

von der minne getwange
from the love's constraint

und was sint alsô lange
and was afterward so long

in demo walde mit der vrauwin
in the wood with the lady

(des mogit ir getrûwen)
(of-it may you trust)

biz des trankis craft vorgî.
until the drink's power passed.

daz wârin dô, alsô sprechin die
those were then, so say those

die ez an dem bûche hân gelesin
who it in the book have read

(daz mag wol ungelogin wesin),
(that may well unlied be),

vîr jâr daz sie in trunkin.
four years that they it drank.

do begunde sie beide dunken,
then began them both to-seem,

sie mochtin sich wol scheidin
they might themselves well part

und begunde in harte leidin
and began to-them very to-grieve

in dem walde dez ungemach:
in the wood the hardship:

sie enmochten einen einigen tach
they might a single day

die arbeit nicht mêr lîden.
the toil not more suffer.

sie mochten kûme vortrîben
they might barely drive-away

die nacht, und dô der tag quam,
the night, and when the day came,

Tristrant dô die vrauwe nam.
Tristrant then the lady took.

zu Ûgrîme he dâ mede reit
to Ugrim he there with rode

unde sprach, im wêre leit
and spoke, to-him were sorrowful

daz he nicht getân habete
that he not done had

swes he in irmanete;
whatever he him admonished;

und sprach, he woldez gerne tûn
and spoke, he would-it gladly do

und die vrauwe ouch dar zû:
and the lady also there to:

alliz daz ir wille wêre.
all that their will were.

dô wart dem gûten klûsenêre
then became to-the good hermit

vil vrôlîchen zu mûte
very gladly to mind

und ted in dô zu gûte
and did for-them then to good

swaz he ummir gemochte
whatever he ever might

und in zu nemen tochte.
and to-them to take availed.

Ûgrîm der gûte man
Ugrim the good man

Tristrande vrâgin began,
Tristrant to-ask began,

ab he des hête rûwe
if he of-it had remorse

swaz he mit der vrauwen
whatever he with the lady

hête getân obiles,
had done of-evil,

‚und wiltû deme koninge
‚and wilt-thou to-the king

sie denne wedir gebin?‘
her then back give?‘

„jâ ich“ sprach der edele degin.
„yes I“ spoke the noble warrior.

daz was Ûgrîme lîp.
that was to-Ugrim dear.

zu hant dô schreib he einen brîf,
at once then wrote he a letter,

deme koninge her in sante
to-the king he it sent

bî dem kûnen Tristrande:
by the bold Tristrant:

he hâte andirs keinen botin.
he had otherwise no messenger.

deme koninge reit he bî gote
to-the king counseled he by God

daz he mit willen tête
that he with will did

swes her in in dem brîfe bête.
whatever he him in the letter asked.

Do der brîf was bereite,
When the letter was ready,

Tristrant nicht lengir beite:
Tristrant not longer waited:

zu hant dô ez nacht wart,
at once when it night became,

dô hûb he sich an die vart.
then raised he himself onto the journey.

dô he zu Tintanjôl quam,
when he to Tintajol came,

dô reit der listsinnige man
then rode the cunning-minded man

in den bômgarten,
into the orchard,

dar inne der koning warte
there in the king waited

obene ûf dem boime.
above upon the tree.

dô hafte he bî dem zôme
then fastened he by the bridle

sîn ros an die linden breit
his horse to the linden broad

dâr im lîp unde leit
where to-him joy and sorrow

was dicke vor geschên
was often before happened

unde gunde sich besên.
and began himself to-look-about.

he gîng dâ der koning lach.
he went where the king lay.

dorch die want he im zû sprach
through the wall he to-him to spoke

und vrâgete in, ab he slîfe.
and asked him, if he slept.

‚jâ ich, ab man mich lîze‘
‚yes I, if one me let‘

sprach der koning rîche.
spoke the king rich.

„ich sage dir wêrlîchen:
„I tell thee truly:

dû mûst eine wîle wachin.“
thou must a while wake.“

‚nû sage mir, von waz sachin?‘
‚now tell me, for what reasons?‘

„ich sagete ez gerne, torste ichz tûn.“
„I would-tell it gladly, (if)-dared I-it do.“

‚nu sprich balde, ich state dir zû.‘
‚now speak quickly, I grant thee to.‘

„dir entbûtit Ûgrîm
„to-thee sends-word Ugrim

der vil lîbe meistir dîn
the very dear master thy

sîn gebet [vil] inniglîchen.“
his prayer [very] inwardly.“

‚nû lône im got der rîche!‘
‚now reward him God the rich!‘

sprach der koning hêre,
spoke the king lordly,

und hîz im sagin mêre.
and bade him tell more.

Dô warf der hêre Tristrant
Then threw the lord Tristrant

ûf den koning dorch die want
toward the king through the wall

den brîf zu einem venstir în
the letter at a window in

und sprach „dîn bîchteger Ûgrîm
and spoke „thy confessor Ugrim

sendit dir desin brîf
sends thee this letter

und entbût dir, ab he dir sî lîf
and sends-word to-thee, if he to-thee be dear

zu einem bîchtegêre.
as a confessor.

daz dû vornimest dese mêre,
that thou perceivest these tidings,

swaz dar ane geschrebin sî,
whatever there on written be,

und entbût dir dâ bî
and sends-word to-thee there by

daz he dir wol heiles gunde:
that he to-thee well salvation granted:

vor alle dîne sunde
for all thy sins

wil he dir zu bûze gebin,
will he to-thee as penance give,

sô mochtestû daz gerne nemen.
so mightest-thou that gladly take.

ouch entbût he dir dar zû:
also sends-word he to-thee there to:

swaz dû dar umme willest tûn,
whatever thou there about wilt do,

daz saltû morgin schrîben lân
that shalt-thou tomorrow write let

und salt den brîf lâzen hân
and shalt the letter let have

an daz crûze daz hîr steit
at the cross which here stands

dâ die strâze enzwei geit
where the road in-two goes

bî dem torme vor der stad:
by the tower before the town:

dâ wil dîn bîchteger daz blat
there will thy confessor the leaf

morgin zu hant heizzin holin.“
tomorrow at once bid fetch.“

do irkante der koning wole
then recognized the king well

Tristranden an der sprâche.
Tristrant by the speech.

her en mochte des nicht gelâzin,
he — might it not leave,

he sprach ‚dû bist ez Tristrant,
he spoke ‚thou art it Tristrant,

ich habe dich vil wol irkant.
I have thee very well known.

beite mîn: ich wil sprechin dich.‘
wait for-me: I will speak-to thee.‘

do enkârte der helt sich
then turned the hero himself

nicht an des koninges rede,
not to the king’s speech,

wen he reit mit gûtem vrede
but he rode with good peace

dannen âne sînen dang.
thence against his will.

der koning ûz der tore sprang.
the king out-of the gate sprang.

ernstlîchen her im nâch schreit.
earnestly he him after cried.

dô reit der hêre âne leit
then rode the lord without sorrow

swar er willen habete.
wherever he will had.

der koning in nicht jagete.
the king him not hunted.

den koning sêre irlange began
the king sorely to-long began

eir die nacht ende nam.
before the night end took.

sô schîre sô ez tag was,
as soon as it day was,

deme hêren man den brîf las.
to-the lord one the letter read.

dô was dar sus an geschrebin:
then was there thus on written:

‚hêre, dû nemest wedir
‚lord, thou take back

mîne vrauwin daz wîp dîn,
my lady the wife thy,

des betet dich sêre Ûgrîm
of-that asks thee sorely Ugrim

in gotlîcher minne.
in godly love.

her heizzet sie bringen
he bids her bring

Tristranden dir engegene
Tristrant to-thee toward

mit luzeler menige.
with little company.

mit lîbe saltû sie entvân
with love shalt-thou her receive

unde salt Tristrandin lân
and shalt Tristrant let

abir an dînen huldin:
again into thy favors:

daz mag her wol vorschuldin
that may he well deserve

mit sîme lîbe swâ he sol:
with his body wherever he shall:

hêre mîn, daz weistû wol
lord my, that knowest-thou well

vil baz denne ich.
very better than I.

dorch gotes liebe bite ich dich,
for God's love ask I thee,

Ûgrîm der meistir dîn,
Ugrim the master thy,

daz dû ez willest gût lân sîn
that thou it wilt good let be

dorch got und mîner bete willen.‘
for God and my prayer's will.‘

dô sweig der degin stille.
then kept-silent the warrior still.

Dô diz alsus irgangin was
When this thus passed was

daz man dem koninge den brîf las,
that one to-the king the letter read,

dô sagete he sînen râtgebin,
then told he his counselors,

wie sie beide hêtin gelegin,
how they both had lain,

dô her sie in dem walde vant.
when he them in the wood found.

dô swûr he wol daz Tristrant
then swore he well that Tristrant

sie gewunne ze wîbe nî,
her won as wife never,

wen daz he ir sus holt was î
except that he to-her thus loyal was ever

und andirs âne mâze lîp.
and otherwise without measure dear.

dô lîz he schrîben einen brîv,
then let he write a letter,

her wolde die vrauwen wedir nemen,
he would the lady back take,

ab ez Tristrande wolde gezemen,
if it to-Tristrant would befit,

dar nâch obir vîr tage;
there after over four days;

wen her machte nicht haben
but he might not have

mê hulde des koninges,
more favor of-the king,

wen he im obeles
for he to-him of-evil

sô vil hête getân,
so much had done,

daz im nî kein man
that to-him never any man

gerîte noch en hîze
counseled nor — bade

daz her in lîze
that he him let

belîben in dem lande:
remain in the land:

wen her dem wîgande
but he to-the warrior

wolde gebin gûten vride
would give good peace

beide hôch unde nider,
both high and low,

swen he im die vrauwen brêchte.
whenever he to-him the lady brought.

daz ted he mit grôzem rechte:
that did he with great right:

daz was geschrebin an daz blat.
that was written on the leaf.

dar zû beschît he im die stad
there to appointed he to-him the place

wâ he die koninginne
where he the queen

kegin im solde bringen.
toward him should bring.

Dô der tag was vorgân,
When the day was passed,

der koning hîz den brîf hân
the king bade the letter have

dar Ûgrîmes bote hen hîz.
where Ugrim's messenger hence bade.

Tristrant des dô nicht en lîz,
Tristrant it then not — left-undone,

her holte in in der nachte;
he fetched it in the night;

sînem meister her in brâchte.
to-his master he it brought.

do der gûte Ûgrîm gelas
when the good Ugrim read

swaz dar ane geschrebin was,
whatever there on written was,

dô sagete her ez deme degene.
then told he it to-the warrior.

do bereite he sich dar kegene:
then readied he himself there toward:

die cleider wârin im tûre,
the clothes were to-him dear,

Ûgrîm gap im zu stûre
Ugrim gave him for support

vil armer lînwâte
very poor linen

swaz he selbe ob im hâte
whatever he himself on him had

und swes her entbern mochte:
and whatever he spare might:

daz im doch wênig tochte,
that to-him yet little availed,

daz dûchte Tristranden gût.
that seemed to-Tristrant good.

do gewan der hêre den mût,
then got the lord the mind,

daz he wolde bringen
that he would bring

zû den têdingen
to the parley

die vrauwe als he gedâchte.
the lady as he thought.

dô her sie dare brâchte,
when he her thither brought,

dô sprach der koning al zuhant
then spoke the king all at-once

‚wie nû, hêre Tristrant,
‚how now, lord Tristrant,

wolt ir mir nû die vrawe gebin?‘
would you to-me now the lady give?‘

„gerne, hêre“ sprach der degin
„gladly, lord“ spoke the warrior

„sal ich daz lant mite habin?“
„shall I the land with have?“

‚nein, daz wil ich wedirsagin.‘
‚no, that will I refuse.‘

„war umme? waz habe ich ûch getân?“
„what for? what have I to-you done?“

‚harte vele, des ich lastir hân.‘
‚very much, of-which I shame have.‘

„daz wil ich gerne bûzin.
„that will I gladly atone.

ouch wil ich der vrauwen genîzin,
also will I of-the lady enjoy,

daz ir daz lâzit.“ ‚ich enwil.‘
that you that leave.“ ‚I will-not.‘

„war umme?“ ‚des ist al zu vil.‘
„what for?“ ‚of-it is all too much.‘

„daz enwêne ich nicht. tût ir sô?“
„that believe I not. do you so?“

‚jâ ich ez.‘ „dâ habet ir ez in hô.“
‚yes I it.‘ „there have you it in height.“

‚nein, ich enhân.‘ „jâ ir hât,
‚no, I have-not.‘ „yes you have,

nû vorgebit mir die missetât
now forgive me the misdeed

daz ûch got von himele lône!“
that you God of heaven reward!“

‚sô muste mich got hônen,
‚so must me God shame,

ab ich ez tête umme daz.
if I it did for that.

ja ist ûch mîn herze sô gehaz,
yes is to-you my heart so hostile,

daz ich ûch nî mê mag werdin holt.‘
that I to-you never more may become loyal.‘

„wâ mete hân ich daz vorscholt?“
„where with have I that deserved?“

„wâ mete? jâ, daz wizzet ir wol.‘
„where with? yes, that know you well.‘

„alsô vele ich ûch noch dînen sol,
„so much I to-you still serve shall,

daz ich ûch wedir werde lîp.“
that I to-you again become dear.“

‚ûwers dînstes begere ich nît.‘
‚your service desire I not.‘

„war umme, hêre?“ ‚daz wil ich sagin:
„what for, lord?“ ‚that will I say:

dâ habe ich lastir unde schadin
there have I shame and harm

vil von ûch gewonnen.‘
much from you won.‘

„wolt ir mir nicht gonnen
„would you to-me not grant

daz ich in ûwerm lande sî?“
that I in your land be?“

‚nein, ir wêret mir zu nâhe bî.
‚no, you were to-me too near by.

ir mûzet ûch enweg haben:
you must yourselves away have:

ich wil ûch wol vorclagen.‘
I will you well get-over.‘

[Der hêre] Tristrant sprach dô
[The lord] Tristrant spoke then

in zorne sîme hêren zû
in anger to-his lord to

„nû nemet die koninginne!
„now take the queen!

und ich rîten hinnen
and I ride hence

und tûn daz beste daz ich mag.
and do the best that I may.

ir gelebit nimmir den tag,
you live-to-see never the day,

daz ich icht mêre
that I aught more

mit sô grôzen êren
with so great honors

werbe nâch ûwern hulden.
strive after your favors.

ûwern haz den wil ich duldin,
your hatred that will I endure,

ab ez von mir nicht ist getân.
if it by me not is done.

des sît sichir âne wân:
of-it be sure without doubt:

genozzet ir nicht ûwers wîbes,
(if)-enjoyed you not of-your wife,

ir soldet wêrlîche ûwers lîbes
you should truly of-your body

ummer vor mir hûten.
ever from me guard.

irer [vil] grôzin gûte
of-her [very] great goodness

solt ir genîzin wedir mich.
shall you enjoy toward me.

owê, himelische koning rîch“
alas, heavenly king rich“

sprach Tristrant der helt gût
spoke Tristrant the hero good

„wie gar wê ez dem manne tût,
„how wholly woe it to-the man does,

daz her daz von im lât
that he that from him lets

daz he sô rechte lîp hât
which he so rightly dear has

als ich mîne vrauwin habe.
as I my lady have.

ez sî vrome adir schade,
it be gain or harm,

doch wil ich sie ûch wedir gebin.
yet will I her to-you back give.

hêre koning," sprach der degin,
lord king," spoke the warrior,

„nû nemet mîne vrauwin,
„now take my lady,

und ich mit grôzin rûwin
and I with great grief

leidir mûz von ir varn."
alas must from her go."

dô reit der koning Marke dar
then rode the king Mark thither

und nam die koninginne wedir
and took the queen back

und hâte sie abir sedir
and had her again since

manich jâr mit lîbe.
many-a year with love.

mit grôzin sorgen sich dô schîden
with great cares themselves then parted

die gûten frûnde dâr zu stunt.
the good friends there at once.

Tristrant beval dô sînen hunt
Tristrant entrusted then his dog

der edelin koninginne
to-the noble queen

und bat sie dorch rechte minne
and asked her for right love

daz sie sîn mit vlîze phlêge
that she of-it with diligence took-care

und in alle tage sêge
and it all days saw

und sîn gedêchte dar bî.
and of-him thought there by.

„ab ich ûch icht lîp sî,
„if I to-you aught dear be,

daz tût an dem brackin schîn!“
that make on the hound shown!“

dô nam sie daz hundelîn
then took she the little-dog

vil lîplîchen an iren arm.
very lovingly on her arm.

[und] Tristrant muste dô varn.
[*and*] *Tristrant must then go.*

Arthur's Court

II

Tristrant serves the king of Ganoje, then rides with Kurneval to Britain, where Arthur receives him and Walwan makes him his companion; no knight of the court matches him. When the champion Delekors rides out for adventure in changed armor, Tristrant unhorses him and gives the horse to a poor man without making himself known. Walwan draws from him that it was he, and that he longs to see the queen, and arranges a hunt near Tintajol. The hart is spared till evening, and when Arthur must lodge for the night Kei asks Mark for lodging and peace for Arthur's company, and Mark grants it.

Dô reit der togenthafte man
Then rode the virtuous man

wâ he sich muchte begân
where he himself might maintain

zu dem koninge von Gânôje.
to the king of Ganoje.

eines morgens vil vrôje
on-a morning very glad

quam der edele Tristrant
came the noble Tristrant

dâ he den selbin koning vant.
where he the same king found.

dô wart he wol entvangin.
then was he well received.

dô was her dâ nicht lange,
then was he there not long,

daz was dem koninge rechte leit.
that was to-the king right sorrowful.

waz der edele hêre gemeit
what the noble lord glad

manheit dâr begînge
of-manhood there did

und wie her ez ane vînge,
and how he it on took,

daz wêre zu sagene al zu lang.
that were to tell all too long.

do gewan he abir den gedang
then got he again the thought

daz he schîre dannen wolde.
that he soon thence would.

dô ted he als her solde:
then did he as he should:

er dankete dem koninge sêre
he thanked the king sorely

der frûntschaft und êre
for-the friendship and honor

die im dâ entboten wart
which to-him there offered was

und machete sich ûf die vart
and made himself onto the journey

âne widerkêre.
without return.

er hâte volkes nicht mêre
he had of-folk not more

zu deme selbin mâle,
at the same time,

wan mit Kurnevâle
but with Kurneval

reit dô der edele wîgant
rode then the noble warrior

zû Britanja in daz lant.
to Britain into the land.

dô he zû Britanja quam,
when he to Britain came,

do en sâgit ir nî keinen man
then — saw you never any man

entvangin sô lîplîchen,
received so lovingly,

als in der koning rîche
as him the king rich

entvîng und al die sîne.
received and all the his.

dô was dâr nîman sô blîde
then was there no-one so glad

sîner zûkunft als her Walwân.
of-his coming as lord Walwan.

der nam in zû gesellin sân,
he took him as companion straightway,

der ted im lîp unde gût:
he did to-him kindness and good:

Tristrant in dem hofe gebôt
Tristrant in the court commanded

swaz her selbe wolde:
whatever he himself would:

swâ man vechten solde
wherever one fight should

adir menlîche werg tûn,
or manly works do,

dâ hâte Tristrant den rûm
there had Tristrant the fame

sunder welhischen strît.
without foreign strife.

diz ted he alsô lange zît
this did he so long time

biz daz he den prîs gewan,
until that he the prize won,

daz in dem hofe was kein man
that in the court was no man

der im daz nicht vorjêge,
who to-him that not avowed,

daz er î mê gesêge
that he ever more had-seen

sô kûnen helt als Tristrant.
so bold hero as Tristrant.

doch was dâr manch wîgant
yet was there many-a warrior

der dicke tet manlîche tât,
who often did manly deed,

daz he ted an sîner stat,
what he did in his place,

daz mochte ir kein vullenbringen.
that might of-them none accomplish.

dô plâgin die jungelinge
then practiced the youths

daz sie nâch âvintûre retin
that they after adventure rode

gewâpent, daz was ir sete,
armed, that was their custom,

zwên tage adir drî.
two days or three.

anders mochte daz nicht sîn:
otherwise might that not be:

swer dem andern wedirreit,
whoever the other met,

ez wêre im lîp adir leit,
it were to-him dear or sorrowful,

der muste mit im vechtin:
he must with him fight:

des plâgin [dô] die gûten knechte
that practiced [then] the good knights

in des koninges Artûses hofe;
in the king Arthur's court;

daz stunt in zu grôzem lobe,
that stood to-them to great praise,

daz sie alle vorsûchtin,
that they all tried,

waz sie ze den êren tochtin.
what they to the honors were-fit.

Dô was dô ein ritter gût,
Then was then a knight good,

her hâte eines lauwin mût,
he had a lion's mind,

Delekors schevalier her hîz:
Delekors chevalier he was-called:

vil nôte her des icht lîz,
very unwillingly he of-it aught left-off,

dâ von man prîs und êre gewan.
there from one prize and honor won.

he was ein harte vrom man
he was a very valiant man

und hâte vele gûtis lobes:
and had much of-good praise:

he was bediuwe und hobisch
he was worthy and courtly

und hâte des landis vil irvarn
and had of-the land much traveled

daz he noch nî quam aldare,
that he still never came thither,

daz he gevîl von heldis stiche
that he fell from hero's thrust

adir î entwiche
or ever yielded

dorch îmannes vorchte.
for anyone's fear.

mannes werg her worchte
man's work he wrought

mit sîner creftigen hant.
with his mighty hand.

eines tagis reit der wîgant
on-one day rode the warrior

ûf âvintûre in den walt:
upon adventure into the wood:

do vorwesselte sich der helt balt
then exchanged himself the hero bold

sîn harnas dô her ûz reit
his harness when he out rode

(des phlag man dorch stolzigheit),
(that practiced one for pride),

daz man sîn nicht irkante.
that one him not knew.

dô quam deme wîgante
then came to-the warrior

Tristrant an dem velde zû
Tristrant on the field to

und stach in von dem rosse dô
and thrust him from the horse then

als he nî dar ûf en quême.
as-if he never there upon — came.

ab he daz ros icht nême?
if he the horse aught took?

jâ, he vûrtez dannen sân.
yes, he led-it thence straightway.

dô quam ein arm man gegân.
then came a poor man going.

dem gab he daz selbe mark;
to-him gave he the same steed;

îdoch he sich vor im barg
yet he himself from him hid

mit sô behendiglîcher liste,
with so deft cunning,

daz jener nicht enwiste, 5090
that that-one not knew,

wer im daz ros hâte gegebin.
who to-him the horse had given.

ouch lag nicht lengir der degin
also lay not longer the warrior

Delekors schevalier.
Delekors chevalier.

er was hobisch unde zier:
he was courtly and fine:

in die borg he zu fûze gî 5095
into the castle he on foot went

(daz was dem helde geschîn nî)
(that was to-the hero happened never)

und sagete selbe mêre,
and told himself tidings,

wie im geschên wêre.
how to-him happened were.

Ez stunt wol sechs [ganze] wochin
It stood well six [whole] weeks

sint daz he nedir ward gestochin, 5100
since that he down was thrust,

daz îman sagin hôrte
that anyone tell heard

von spele noch von worte,
in jest nor in word,

wer daz habete getân.
who that had done.

dô wart der hêre Walwân
then became the lord Walwan

mit dem koninge des in ein,
with the king of-it at one,

ez hête Tristrant getân;
it had Tristrant done;

wen sie dâchten an iren mût,
for they thought in their mind,

da en wêre nîman sô gût:
there — were no-one so good:

‚ez ist âne in nicht geschên.
‚it is without him not happened.

wer mag uns daz besên?‘
who may us that see-to:‘

daz es îman gerûchte
that it anyone cared

und dar umme vorsûchte,
and there about tried,

bat dô der koning rîche.
asked then the king rich.

do begunde listeglîche
then began cunningly

hêre Walwân der snelle
lord Walwan the swift

vrâgin sînen gesellin.
to-ask his companion.

he wolde om des nicht vorjên.
he would to-him it not avow.

do begunde her in sêre vlên
then began he him sorely to-beseech

daz he im sagete [die] mêre,
that he to-him told [the] tidings,

ab ez im geschên wêre,
if it to-him happened were,

dorch Îsaldin willen.
for Isalde's will.

dô sprach der helt sundir stille
then spoke the hero without secrecy

‚geselle, ich habez jâ getân:
‚companion, I have-it indeed done:

swes man mich vrâgin î began
whatever one me to-ask ever began

dorch willen mîner vrauwin,
for will of-my lady,

daz lâze ich offinbêrlîch schauwin.
that let I openly behold.

ich hele des dorch keine nôt,
I conceal it for no need,

solde ich dar umme ligen tôt.‘
(if)-should I there for lie dead.‘

Dô sprach der hêre Walwân
Then spoke the lord Walwan

„gnâde mûze sie des hân,
„grace may she for-it have,

mîne vrauwe die koninginne,
my lady the queen,

daz dû dorch ire minne
that thou for her love

mir dese ding hâst vorjên.
to-me these things hast avowed.

geselle, machstû sie icht sên
companion, mayst-thou her at-all see

alsô dicke als dir lîp is?“
as often as to-thee dear is?“

‚nein ich, leidir, des sî gewis,
‚no I, alas, of-it be certain,

mir ist nicht sô wol geschên.‘
to-me is not so well happened.‘

„geselle, wiltû sie gerne sen?“
„companion, wilt-thou her gladly see?“

‚jâ ich, solde ich dar umme sterbin.‘
‚yes I, (if)-should I there for die.‘

„sô wil ich dar umme werbin
„so will I there for strive

und wil dir helfin, ab ich mag,
and will thee help, if I may,

daz dû ûf einen korzen tag
that thou on a short day

kumest dâ die vrauwe sî:
comest where the lady be:

mîn hêre hât hîr nâhe bî
my lord has here near by

zu Tintanjôl ein jahehûs:
at Tintajol a hunting-house:

dâ sal der koning Artûs
there shall the king Arthur

jagin dorch den willin dîn;
hunt for the will thy;

sô brenge ich dich mede, mag ez sîn,
so bring I thee with, (if)-may it be,

dâr dû denne machst beschauwin
where thou then mayst behold

die koninginne dîne vrauwin.“
the queen thy lady.“

des wart Tristrant vil vrô.
of-it became Tristrant very glad.

her Walwân schicketiz alsô,
lord Walwan arranged-it so,

daz der koning dâ jagin reit.
that the king there to-hunt rode.

nu vornemet mit welchir wîsheit
now hear with what wisdom

her Walwân vullenbrâchte
lord Walwan accomplished

swes he zu tûne gedâchte.
whatever he to do thought.

Der walt, dâ von ich ûch wil sagin,
The wood, of which I to-you will tell,

dâ în der koning dô reit jagin,
there into the king then rode to-hunt,

der en was sîn nicht aleine:
it — was his not alone:

he was mit im gemeine
it was with him in-common

Markes sînes lîbin vrûndes;
of-Mark his dear friend's;

und lîf ein teil des wildes
and ran a part of-the game

bî Tintanjôl ûf den stein,
by Tintajol onto the rock,

die hêren wordin des en ein
the lords became of-it at one

daz sie zu samen quâmen
that they to together came

und ire hunde nâmen
and their hounds took

und vrôlîchen jagetin,
and gladly hunted,

sweder in baz behagete,
whichever them better pleased,

zu dem jagehûs adir zû der stat.
to the hunting-house or to the town.

[her] Walwân dô die jeger bat
[lord] Walwan then the hunters asked

daz sie zu herze lîzen
that they to hart let

der zu Tintanjôl lîfe,
which to Tintajol ran,

ab sie in icht hêten lîp.
if they him at-all had dear.

dô lîzen es die jeger nît,
then left it the hunters not,

sie tâten swaz her wolde.
they did whatever he would.

der herz lîf als her solde:
the hart ran as he should:

man treib in von dem jagehûs.
one drove him from the hunting-house.

dô quam der koning Artûs
then came the king Arthur

mit den sînen dar gedrabet
with the his thither trotted

do he bî der stat wart irjaget
when he by the town was hunted

und hîz den herz nedir slân.
and bade the hart down strike.

dô bat der hêre Walwân
then asked the lord Walwan

und Tristrant der werde degin
and Tristrant the worthy warrior

daz sie den herz lîzin lebin
that they the hart let live

biz sie im den tôd irkorin.
until they for-it the death chose.

mit listen zogin sie ez vore
with cunning drew they it forth

daz man im den lîp nicht en nam
that one from-it the life not — took

biz ez an den âbent quam.
until it to the evening came.

Dô sie den herz geslûgen
When they the hart slew

und daz en ein getrûgin,
and that at one agreed,

wer in vûren solde,
who it carry should,

und dô der koning rîten wolde,
and when the king ride would,

dô vorgîng itzunt der tach.
then passed now the day.

der koning zu sîme nebin sprach
the king to his nephew spoke

‚diz ungemach ich von dir hân
‚this vexation I from thee have

daz dû mir nicht lizest slân
that thou me not lettest slay

den herz wol bî zîten.
the hart well in time.

nû mûze wir rîten
now must we ride

bî nacht wol drî mîle.‘
by night well three miles.‘

„waz ist nôt sulch îlen?“
„what is need of-such hastening?“

sprach Walwân der herre
spoke Walwan the lord

„Tintanjôl ist nicht verre:
„Tintajol is not far:

dâ mogit ir wol belîben
there may you well remain

und dese nacht [mit rauwe] vertrîben
and this night [with rest] pass

mit deme koninge Markin
with the king Mark

der ûch dicke starke
who you often strongly

hât geladin in sîn hûs.“
has invited into his house.“

dô sprach der koning Artûs
then spoke the king Arthur

‚dû weist wol, wie ez dar umme stât,
‚thou knowest well, how it there about stands,

daz sîner hulde nicht en hât
that his favor not — has

Tristrant dîn geselle.‘
Tristrant thy companion.‘

dô sprach der degin snelle
then spoke the warrior swift

„dâ sendit Keien achtir wegin
„there send Kei off away

und entbîtet im, ir wollet nemen
and send-word to-him, you will take

mit im die herberge,
with him the lodging,

ab ir ouch vrede mogit werbin
if you also peace may win

den die mit ûch komen dare.“
for-those who with you come thither.“

dô muste Keie hene varin.
then must Kei hence go.

dô he zu Tintanjôl quam,
when he to Tintajol came,

und koning Marke daz vornam
and king Mark that heard

daz Keie von sîme hêren sprach,
what Kei from his lord spoke,

zu hant he dô wedir jach
at once he then back declared

daz sie vrede soldin hân,
that they peace should have,

swaz sie im hêten [leids] getân.
whatever they to-him had [of-harm] done.

des wart inniglîchen vrô
of-it became inwardly glad

Keie nicht lengir beite dô,
Kei not longer waited then,

he sagetez sîme herren.
he told-it to-his lord.

‚waz mag uns nû gewerren?‘
‚what may us now trouble?‘

sprach Walwân der wîgant.
spoke Walwan the warrior.

des vrauwete sich auch Tristrant.
of-it rejoiced himself also Tristrant.

The Scythes by the Bed

III

Mark warns his guests that whoever shames him will die. All lie in the hall, and Mark has a block fitted with scythes to catch Tristrant on his way to the queen. Tristrant goes to her, is cut, and bleeds. Walwan raises a lament, and Kei, mocking, proposes a scuffle in which all are cut alike; Arthur's knights cut themselves, and Walwan pushes Kei onto the blades. Woken, Mark rebukes them, Arthur says they do the same at home, and Mark relents; Tristrant spends the night with Isalde. In the morning they all limp, Arthur rides home, and Tristrant leaves Arthur too, to Walwan's grief.

Dô der koning Marke vornam
When the king Mark perceived

daz im der lîbe gast quam,
that to-him the dear guest came,

mit kerzin gîng her im entkegin.
with candles went he him toward.

des tar ich mich gar wol vorplegin
of-it dare I myself wholly well pledge

alsô tûre als ich ûmmir sol:
as dearly as I ever shall:

ân einen her sie alle wol,
except one he them all well,

den gast und ouch die sîne, entvîng.
the guest and also the his, received.

koning Artûs dô gîng
king Arthur then went

zu der zarten koninginne.
to the tender queen.

do entvîng sie in mit minne
then received she him with love

und swer dâ mit im quâme.
and whoever there with him came.

nu hôret: herren Walwâne,
now hear: lord Walwan,

dem wolde die vrauwe zû sprechin.
to-him would the lady to speak.

dô wolde he nicht brechin
then would he not break

sîme gesellin kumpanîen:
to-his companion companionship:

eir wolde he vorzîen
rather would he forgo

daz sie in nicht en kuste;
that she him not — kissed;

wen sie leidir nicht en muste
for she alas not — might

Tristranden icht gegrûzen.
Tristrant at-all greet.

al en mochte sie es nicht bûzin,
although — might she it not remedy,

ez en was ir doch nicht lîp.
it — was to-her yet not dear.

alsô wart dô gekust nît
so was then kissed not

hêre Walwân in der zît:
lord Walwan in the time:

daz vortrûg he âne nît.
that bore he without grudge.

Der koning mit grôzir wirtschaft
The king with great hospitality

sînen lîben gesten gab
to-his dear guests gave

herberge und alles des genûg
lodging and of-all that enough

daz got zu spîse î geschûf.
which God for food ever created.

dô sie wol zu mâze
when they well in measure

beide trunken unde âzen,
both drank and ate,

der wert dô sînen gast bat
the host then his guest asked

daz he dâr an sîner stad
that he there in his place

daz wol wolde bewarin,
that well would guard,

daz die mit im quâmen dare
that those-who with him came thither

ir kein im icht lastirs tête,
of-them none to-him aught of-shame did,

und sprach, daz her hête
and spoke, that he had

in allin gûtin vrede gegebin
to-them all good peace given

und wolde ir wol lâzin plegin.
and would of-them well let take-care.

‚wolde mich abir îman schenden,
‚(if)-would me however anyone disgrace,

daz mochte werdin sîn ende.
that might become his end.

alsô ich den warne:
so I him warn:

her mag ez lîchte irarnen,
he may it easily pay-for,

al daz he mir î getede.‘
all that he to-me ever did.‘

dô sprach der werde gast zu stete
then spoke the worthy guest at once

„dâ habit ir mîne hulfe zû,
„there have you my help to,

swer ûch lastir wolle tûn,
whoever to-you shame will do,

daz ûch daz wol werde gebûzit.“
that to-you that well become atoned.“

dô wart Tristrant gegrûzit
then was Tristrant greeted

und wol gewarnet hîr mete.
and well warned here with.

dô hâte he î den aldin sete
then had he ever the old custom

daz he sîne lîben vrauwin
that he his dear lady

dorch nîmannes drauwin
for no-one's threatening

ummer wolde vormîden:
ever would shun:

des muste der helt kummer lîden.
for-it must the hero hardship suffer.

Ich sage ûch âne logene
I tell you without lie

daz hîr bevorn die koninge
that here before the kings

hêrlîcher sale nicht plâgin,
of-lordly halls not kept,

wan sie nicht wârin
for they not were

alsô wol berâtin
so well provided

mit gûtin kemenâtin
with good chambers

als nû hîr die hêren sîn:
as now here the lords are:

daz was in Markes hofe schîn,
that was in Mark's court shown,

wen ez en mochten sîne geste
for it — might his guests

nirgen in der veste
anywhere in the fortress

rûgen wan in dem sal:
rest except in the hall:

dar inne lâgin sie zu mâl.
there in lay they all together.

des phlag man dô in der zît,
that practiced one then in the time,

daz der koning und sîn wîp
that the king and his wife

an dem andern ende lâgin.
at the other end lay.

eines setin sie dô plâgin
a custom they then practiced

daz ir iegelîch aleine lach:
that of-them each alone lay:

Tristrant daz wol gesach
Tristrant that well saw

und gedâchte he wolde dar gân.
and thought he would thither go.

dô lîz der leidige wert beslân
then let the loathsome host fit

mit wulfesîsen ein bloch.
with wolf-irons a block.

die kemmerêre wolde joch
the chamberlain would even

daz man die lîcht ûz leschte;
that one the lights out quenched;

wen he wol wuste
for he well knew

daz Tristrant ze der vrauwen wolde komen
that Tristrant to the lady would come

her nêmes schadin adir vromen,
he would-take-of-it harm or gain,

ab he sich denne vorsnete,
if he himself then cut,

daz her in begriffe dâ mete
that he him seized there with

und im nême den lîp:
and from-him took the life:

sus behûte he sîn wîp.
thus guarded he his wife.

Tristrant enwuste nicht der mêre.
Tristrant knew not of-the tidings.

daz im alsus gelâgit wêre.
that for-him thus laid-in-wait were.

Dô daz volg al entslîf,
When the folk all fell-asleep,

Tristrant des nicht enlîz
Tristrant it not left

her en gînge zû der koningîn:
he unless went to the queen:

dô quam ez alse ez solde sîn,
then came it as it should be,

und vorsneit sich sêre.
and cut himself sorely.

doch enwolde he nicht wedir kêren
yet would he not back turn

eir he zû der koningîn quam:
before he to the queen came:

sînes hemedes gêren her nam,
of-his shirt's gore he took,

obir die wundin her in bant.
over the wound he it bound.

dô gîng der hêre Tristrant
then went the lord Tristrant

und besprach die koninginne.
and spoke-with the queen.

do begunde im sêre dringen
then began for-him sorely to-press

daz blût vaste dorch die brûch,
the blood fast through the breeches,

daz daz manchvalt tûch
that the manifold cloth

mochte des nicht bewarin,
might it not hold,

im worde daz bein gare
to-him would-become the leg wholly

blûtich von der wunde.
bloody from the wound.

do en was nicht lange stunde
then — was not long hour

Tristrant mit der vrauwin:
Tristrant with the lady:

des solt ir wol getrûwin,
of-it shall you well trust,

daz sie daz sêre clagete.
that she that sorely lamented.

Tristrant ir dô sagete
Tristrant to-her then told

wie im geschên wêre.
how to-him happened were.

do irschrag sie der mêre
then was-frightened she at-the tidings

und begunde sêre weinen.
and began sorely to-weep.

dô musten sie sich balde scheiden
then must they themselves quickly part

daz dâ anders nicht was geschên
so-that there otherwise nothing was happened

wen helsen unde ane sên
than embracing and on looking

und minneglîch ummevân.
and lovingly embracing.

dô quam der hêre gegân
then came the lord going

zû sînem bette wedir
to his bed back

und legete sich abir nedir
and laid himself again down

und begunde blûten als ein swîn.
and began to-bleed as a swine.

‚nû mûz ich den lîp mîn
‚now must I the life my

âne zwîvel hân vorlorn:
without doubt have lost:

nû wil der koning sînen zorn
now will the king his anger

vil harte an mir rechin.‘
very hard on me avenge.‘

do begunde der hêre sprechin
then began the lord to-speak

mit eime jêmirlîchen worte.
with a lamentable word.

her Walwân diz gehôrte
lord Walwan this heard

und vrâgete, waz im wêre.
and asked, what to-him were.

dô he bevand die mêre,
when he found the tidings,

dô wart he harte unvrô
then became he very unglad

und stalte sulch jâmer dô
and set-up such grief then

daz ez alle die vornâmen
that it all those perceived

die in dem sal lâgin.
who in the hall lay.

Dô der koning Artûs vornam
When the king Arthur heard

daz Tristrant der kûne man
that Tristrant the bold man

sich sêre vorsnetin habete,
himself sorely cut had,

vil jêmirlîche her clagete.
very lamentably he lamented.

alsô ted alliz daz dâ was:
so did all that there was:

ir ieglîch zû dem andern sprach
of-them each to the other spoke

‚er mûz den lîp vorlorn hân,
‚he must the life lost have,

wen der wert hât getân
for the host has done

alsô grôze vorrede
so great forewarning

daz ich in nicht mag befriden.‘
that I him not may protect.‘

„wir helfin im ûz der nôt,
„we help him out-of the distress,

adir [wir] kîsen mit im den tôt“
or [we] choose with him the death“

sprach jener den he nedir stach;
spoke that-one whom he down thrust;

her Walwân ouch des selbin jach:
lord Walwan also the same avowed:

alsô tetin offinbâre
so did openly

alle die dâ wârin
all who there were

dare mit Artûse komen.
thither with Arthur come.

sie gewunnen es schadin adir vromen,
they got of-it harm or gain,

sie wolten âne zwîfel
they would without doubt

alle dâ belîben,
all there remain,

‚adir wir helfin im von dannen.'
‚or we help him from thence.'

der hêre mit sînen mannen
the lord with his men

daz getrûwelîche jach.
that faithfully avowed.

her Keie dô sprach
lord Kei then spoke

„ir meinet alle stolz sîn:
„you think all proud to-be:

an welchem dinge ist daz schîn?
in what thing is that shown?

her dunket mir ein hobisch man
he seems to-me a courtly man

der nû sulche list kan
who now such cunning can

dêr im von hinnen helfe."
which him from hence help."

daz sprach her mit gelfe
that spoke he with boasting

*

(lacuna)

und rît in dorch nît
and counseled them through envy

einen rât, der was al gût.
a counsel, which was all good.

„ich sage ûch, hêren, waz ir tût:
„I tell you, lords, what you do:

wir hebin ein gestrûze
we raise a scuffle

und bewarin in dem gerûsche
and take-care in the uproar

daz wir alle werdin vorsnetin:
that we all become cut:

dar ist im gehulfin mete."
there is him helped with."

Dô sprach der hêre Walwân
Then spoke the lord Walwan

‚gnâde mûstû des hân,
‚grace mayst-thou of-it have,

entrûwin dû hâst gesagit wâr.'
in-truth thou hast said true.'

zu hant lîf der helt dar:
at once ran the hero thither:

harte sêre he sich vorsneit.
very sorely he himself cut.

dô wârin sie alle wol gereit:
then were they all well ready:

zu hant sie ûf sprungen,
at once they up sprang,

des gestrûzes sie begundin:
the scuffle they began:

zweier wege sie sich stîzen.
two ways they themselves pushed.

nicht sie des gelîzen,
not they of-it left-off,

sie vorsnetin sich [al] gemeine,
they cut themselves [all] in-common,

wen Keie der helt eine,
except Kei the hero alone,

mit listen her al umme sleich.
with cunning he all about crept.

her Walwân in ouch begreif
lord Walwan him also seized

und stîz in nedir ûf daz bloch:
and pushed him down onto the block:

von den sensin wart im doch
from the scythes became to-him yet

die grôste wunde zu teile.
the greatest wound to share.

‚owê, der grôzin unheile!'
‚alas, the great misfortune!'

rîf Keie der helt obir al
cried Kei the hero over all

‚gein hie wulfe in desim sal
‚go here wolves in this hall

daz man in hîr sal stellin?
that one them here shall trap?

got mûze sie ummir vellin!
God may them ever fell!

ich bin vorsnetin an mîn bein:
I am cut on my leg:

got gesende uns schiere heim!
God send us soon home!

waz solde wir lengir hie?
what should we longer here?

wa irvûr man sulche bôsheit î
where learned one such wickedness ever

daz iz î koning mêr getête
that it ever king more did

der lîbe geste bî im hête,
who dear guests by him had,

daz he sie mit sensin vorsnete?
that he them with scythes cut?

hîr sîn wunderlîche sete.‘
here are wondrous customs.‘

so offinbâr he daz machete,
so openly he that made,

daz der koning dâ von entwachete
that the king there from awoke

und sprach in zorniglîchen zû
and spoke to-them angrily to

‚wie getûd ir, hêren, alsô?
‚how do you, lords, so?

ich meinte ir wêret wol gezogin:
I thought you were well bred:

sô geit ir [des] nachtes umme tobin
so go you [at] night about raving

als die ungehûren.‘
as the monsters.‘

„ich enmag in nicht gestûren“
„I may them not restrain“

sprach dô der koning Artûs,
spoke then the king Arthur,

„sie tûn zu allin zîten sus:
„they do at all times thus:

sie lâzin es dâ heime nît,
they leave it there at-home not,

wedir dorch mich noch mîn wîp.“
neither for me nor my wife.“

Der koning Marke sînen zorn
The king Mark his anger

dô vil schîre hâte vorkorn.
then very soon had renounced.

des wârin sie alle vil vrô;
of-it were they all very glad;

nedir legetin sie sich dô.
down laid they themselves then.

Tristrant der kûne man
Tristrant the bold man

wedir dô ze der vrauwin quam:
back then to the lady came:

mit ein andir sie dô lâgin.
with each other they then lay.

ich sage ûch sundir vrâgin
I tell you without asking

daz in beidin daz was lîp:
that to-them both that was dear:

dô schîden sie sich vor tage nît.
then parted they themselves before day not.

dô die ritter ûf stundin
when the knights up stood

und iegelîch sîne wundin
and each his wound

verband unde clagete,
bound and lamented,

Marke sich dô schamete
Mark himself then shamed

daz ez in allin was geschên.
that it to-them all was happened.

sie musten hinkene gên;
they must limping go;

dô hank Keie allirmeist.
then limped Kei most-of-all.

dô hâte Walwân wol geleist
then had Walwan well performed

Tristrande sîn gelobede.
to-Tristrant his promise.

dô schîden sich die koninge.
then parted themselves the kings.

Artûs kârte heim wedir.
Arthur turned home back.

dô bleib Tristrant nicht lange sedir
then remained Tristrant not long afterward

mit im, daz was im nicht lîp;
with him, that was to-him not dear;

doch wolde he des lâzin nît
yet would he it leave not

dorch keiner hande ding,
for any kind-of thing,

von dannen reit der jungeling.
from thence rode the youth.

Hêren Walwâne was vil leit
To-lord Walwan was very sorrowful

daz sîn geselle von im reit.
that his companion from him rode.

he irmanete in der geselleschaft
he reminded him of-the companionship

und alles daz im î geschach
and all that to-him ever happened

lîbes unde gûtes.
of-love and of-good.

dô mochte in sînes mûtes
then might him of-his mind

nîman irwenden.
no-one turn.

des koninges ingesinde
the king's household

clagete in vil sêre.
lamented him very sorely.

Artûs der koning hêre
Arthur the king lordly

bôt im êgin unde lên.
offered him freehold and fief.

ich enweiz, waz im was geschên
I know-not, what to-him was happened

daz he des nicht wolde lâzin:
that he it not would leave:

dô vûr he sîne strâze,
then went he his road,

sîn harnas he mede nam.
his harness he with took.

dô sprach der hêre Walwân,
then spoke the lord Walwan,

im geschêge nî sô leide;
to-him happened never so sorrowful;

daz sprâchin ouch beide
that spoke also both

die koningîn und der koning rîch.
the queen and the king rich.

Karahes Besieged

IV

After seven nights' riding Tristrant comes into a ravaged, burned land, and on the fourth day the priest Michel tells him that King Havelin of Karahes is besieged by his vassal Count Riole of Nantes, whom he refused his daughter's hand. Tristrant offers his service; the king warns that they have no bread, and his son Kehenis takes him as companion and names his sister, Isalde, and Tristrant thinks he has lost Isalde and found Isalde again. At dawn Tristrant rides out alone, unhorses Riole, and takes his surety before Riole's men drive him back. Riole keeps faith, comes into the town as his captive, and on Tristrant's order sends in food enough for six weeks rather than go to the tower. When the besiegers threaten to destroy the town unless Riole is freed, Tristrant refuses to release him for any threat.

Tristrant reit dô vor sich
Tristrant rode then before himself

als her in siben nachtin
as he in seven nights

allirmeist gerîten machte.
most-of-all ride might.

dô quam he in ein schône lant;
then came he into a fair land;

daz was vorhert und vorbrant
that was ravaged and burned

daz he nichein hûs gesach.
that he no house saw.

gûtir borge dâr genûg lach
of-good castles there enough lay

vil garwe zubrochin:
very wholly broken:

an in was gerochin
on them was avenged

swaz dar abe was getân.
whatever there from was done.

dô sach he bî deme wege stân
then saw he by the way stand

manich dorf und stat grôz:
many-a village and town great:

des wundirs in doch sêre vordrôz,
of-the wonder him yet sorely vexed,

wen he reit drî tage wol dar ane
for he rode three days well there on

daz he wedir hunt noch hanen
that he neither dog nor cock

in dem lande nî vornam.
in the land ever perceived.

do der vîrde tag ze der nône quam,
when the fourth day to the none came,

do irsach der helt werde
then saw the hero worthy

stein ûf einem berge
stand upon a hill

eine alten cappelle.
an old chapel.

dâ bî gesach der snelle
there by saw the swift-one

rôchin ein cleinez hûselîn
smoke a little little-house

als ez wol mochte gesîn
as it well might be

eines pfaffin der dâ sunge.
of-a priest who there sang.

die zwêne helde junge
the two heroes young

quâmen dar zu stundin.
came thither at once.

einen prîster sie dâ vunden.
a priest they there found.

der prîster der hîz Michêl.
the priest he was-called Michel.

Tristrant dô nedir vîl
Tristrant then down fell

und bat in der herberge.
and asked him for-the lodging.

he sprach, he gêbe sie im gerne
he spoke, he would-give it to-him gladly

sô her sie beste habete.
as he it best had.

die ros sich dô labeten
the horses themselves then refreshed

und die lûte al dar zû
and the people all there to

biz des morgenes vrû.
until in-the morning early.

des âbendes dô sie âzin
in-the evening when they ate

und bî deme vûre sâzin,
and by the fire sat,

Tristrant vrâgin dô began
Tristrant to-ask then began

Michaêlen den gûten man,
Michel the good man,

waz landes daz wêre.
what of-land that were.

do berichte her die mêre:
then related he the tidings:

[he sprach,] ez wêre ein gût lant
[*he spoke,*] *it were a good land*

,eir ez sus wart vorbrant.
,before it thus became burned.

hie wûchs wol korn unde wîn.
here grew well grain and wine.

der hêre heizzit Havelîn
the lord is-called Havelin

der daz gerichte hie hât
who the jurisdiction here has

und die gewalt an im stât:
and the power on him stands:

he ist ein grôzir koning hêre.
he is a great king lordly.

dese grôzin unêre
these great dishonors

habin im sîne man getân
have to-him his men done

die im soldin bî stân
who to-him should by stand

und im dînen um sîn gût.
and to-him serve for his goods.

ich sage ûch, wie ez sich irhûb
I tell you, how it itself raised

daz mîn hêre sus geschant is.
that my lord thus shamed is.

Rîôle von Nantis
Riole of Nantes

ist ein rîcher grâve;
is a rich count;

der bat daz im gâbe
he asked that to-him should-give

mîn hêre sîne tochtir.
my lord his daughter.

do enwolde he noch en mochte
then would he nor — might

sînem manne sie nicht gebin:
to-his man her not give:

dô wolde he sie selbe nemen,
then would he her himself take,

wen her ist ein gût knecht.
for he is a good knight.

tête he nicht daz unrecht
(if)-did he not the wrong

daz he mîme hêren tût,
which he to-my lord does,

sô wêre he bedirwe unde gût.
so would-be he worthy and good.

die vorsten sîn zu im gevallin
the princes are to him fallen

unde hân zubrochen alle
and have broken all

mînes lîben hêren borge.
of-my dear lord's castles.

he ist mit einer cleinen storje
he is with a small troop

zu Karahes enbinnen:
at Karahes within:

die stat enmogen sie nicht gewinnen.
the town may they not win.

desin schaden hât her von der scholde,
this harm has he from the guilt,

daz her nicht enwolde
that he not would

sîn tochtir obele bestaten.
his daughter ill bestow.

ouch enwart nî sîn gegate
also was never his peer

in einem rîche geborn.
in a realm born.

daz he sîn gût hât vorlorn,
that he his goods has lost,

daz ist manches mannes schade,
that is many-a man's harm,

wen swer daz wolde habin,
for whoever that would have,

der worde sîn wol sat.
he would-become of-it well sated.

einen son er noch hât,
a son he still has,

der ist Kehenis genant
who is Kehenis named

und ist ein kûner wîgant.
and is a bold warrior.

mochte er hoverecht hân,
(if)-might he court-right have,

er torste wol bestân
he dared well attack

einen sîn gelîchen:
one his equal:

dem wolde er nicht wîchen.
to-him would he not yield.

nû ist der vîande sô vil.
now is of-the enemies so many.

daz er sie mit nîdes spil
that he them with hostility's game

mit nichte bestân mag.
by no-means attack may.

ouch lâzen sie es keinen tag,
also leave they it no day,

sie sûchen in dâ vor;
they seek him there before;

sô sint beslozzen die tor
so are locked the gates

daz nîman her ûz en gât:
that no-one hither out — goes:

gar obele ez dar umme stât.‘
wholly ill it there about stands.‘

Tristrant begunde vrâgen,
Tristrant began to-ask,

wie nâhe die borg lâge,
how near the castle lay,

dar die nôt inne wêre.
where the distress within were.

dô sagete he im [schiere] die mêre,
then told he him [soon] the tidings,

dâ hin wêrin cleiner mîle zwû.
thither hence were little miles two.

zu hant des morgenes vrû
at once in-the morning early

Tristrant orloubes dô gebat
Tristrant leave then asked

und hîz im wîsen die stat.
and bade him show the town.

dô he zu Karahes quam,
when he to Karahes came,

dô vant he den koning stân
then found he the king stand

vorne an der zinnen.
before on the battlements.

dô vrâgete he mit minnen,
then asked he with love,

ab der koning wêre dâ.
if the king were there.

dô sprach der selbe hêre ‚jâ,
then spoke the same lord ‚yes,

waz ist ûch lîp? ich bin alhie.‘
what is to-you dear? I am all-here.‘

sîn son ouch dâ vore gî
his son also there before went

und beschauwete den wîgant.
and beheld the warrior.

dô sprach der hêre Tristrant
then spoke the lord Tristrant

„hêre, ich hôrte sêre clagin,
„lord, I heard sorely lament,

ir hêtet laster unde schaden
you had shame and harm

von ûwern vîanden genomen:
from your enemies taken:

nû bin ich here komen
now am I hither come

ûch zu dînste, daz ist mîn wille.“
to-you to service, that is my will.“

dô sweig der koning al stille.
then kept-silent the king all still.

zu lest sprach her im zô
at last spoke he to-him to

‚ez steit mir leidir nicht alsô,
‚it stands to-me alas not so,

daz ich ûch gehaldin moge
that I you keep may

sô daz ez uns beiden toge.‘
so that it us both avail.‘

Dô Tristrant daz gehôrte,
When Tristrant that heard,

der rede he antworte
to-the speech he answered

gar gezogenlîche
wholly courteously

„hêre koning rîche,
„lord king rich,

war umme sprechit ir daz?“
what for speak you that?“

‚ich mûz ûch bekennen baz‘
‚I must you know better‘

sprach der koning Havelîn
spoke the king Havelin

‚eir ich ûch die togent mîn
‚before I to-you the virtue my

gar kunden welle.‘
wholly announce will.‘

dô sprach der degen snelle
then spoke the warrior swift

„ich bin geheizzen Tristrant,
„I am called Tristrant,

Lochnois ist mînes vatir lant
Lochnois is my father's land

und ich bin Markes swestir barn
and I am Mark's sister's child

von Kurnevâles her gevarn
from Cornwall hither journeyed

ûch zu hulfe und zu vromen,
to-you to help and to gain,

wen ich habe dicke vornomen
for I have often heard

von ûch êre und frumegheit.“
of you honor and prowess.“

‚owê, jâmer unde leit
‚alas, grief and sorrow

daz ûch mîn ouge î gesach,
that you my eye ever saw,

sint ich ûch behalden nicht en mag!‘
since I you keep not — may!‘

„war umme, hêre?“ ‚ich en tar
„what for, lord?“ ‚I — dare

ez ûch sagen nicht: ich weiz vor wâr
it to-you tell not: I know for true

daz ez mir nicht gût wêre.‘
that it to-me not good were.‘

„ich gelobe ûch in trûwin, hêre,
„I promise you in truth, lord,

daz ich ûch nicht melde.
that I you not betray.

ouch solt ir mîn nicht entgelden,
also shall you of-me not pay,

wen ich ez ûch zu laster nicht en kêre.
for I it to-you to shame not — turn.

waz sal ich sagin mêre?“
what shall I say more?“

‚ich mûz ûch clagin mîne nôt:
‚I must to-you lament my distress:

wir en habin hie kein brôt
we — have here no bread

noch der spîse; âne zwîvel
nor of-the food; without doubt

ir mochtet des kummers nicht irlîden
you might the hardship not endure

den wir armen lûte hân:
which we poor people have:

sô jêmerlîche wir uns begân.‘
so lamentably we ourselves maintain.‘

dô sprach sich abir Tristrant
then spoke himself again Tristrant

zu deme koninge al zu hant
to the king all at once

‚hêre, ich sage ûch vor wâr:
‚lord, I tell you for true:

ich bin mêr wen zwei jâr
I am more than two years

in einem walde genesin
in a wood survived

und bin doch alsô gewesin,
and am yet so been,

daz ich nî brôtes enpeiz:
that I never of-bread tasted:

alsô tûn ich daz, got weiz.‘
so do I that, God knows.‘

„nîman ist hier inne,
„no-one is here within,

wedir koning noch koninginne,
neither king nor queen,

noch man noch wîp,
nor man nor woman,

sie en neren sich andirs nît
they — nourish themselves otherwise not

wan mit ein wênig bônen.“
than with a little beans.“

Tristrant sprach ‚got mûze ûch lônen,
Tristrant spoke ‚God may you reward,

alsô lât mich mit ûch lebin!‘
so let me with you live!‘

dô sprach Kehenis der degin
then spoke Kehenis the warrior

‚he wil gerne hîr sîn,
‚he will gladly here be,

vater, dorch den willin mîn,
father, for the will my,

her manet uns ernstlîchen:
he urges us earnestly:

entphât in minniglîchen
receive him lovingly

und lâzit in mit uns habin
and let him with us have

beide vromen unde schadin!‘
both gain and harm!‘

her hêtes schadin adir vromen,
he would-have-of-it harm or gain,

der koning hîz in willekomen.
the king bade him welcome.

do die ritter daz gehôrten,
when the knights that heard,

sie sprungin [snelle] zû der portin:
they sprang [swiftly] to the gate:

daz sloz sie schiere dannen stîzen,
the lock they soon thence pushed,

den helt sie balde în lîzen.
the hero they quickly in let.

Kehenis kein im gîng:
Kehenis toward him went:

zu eime gesellin he in entvîng,
as a companion he him received,

den vil kûnen Tristranden:
the very bold Tristrant:

mit zungin und mit handen
with tongues and with hands

labetin sie geselleschaft.
pledged they companionship.

Kehenis dô schiere zû im sprach
Kehenis then soon to him spoke

‚geselle, wolle wir hene gân
‚companion, will we hence go

daz dich die vrauwin entvân,
that thee the ladies receive,

sô machstû mîne swestir sên.
so mayst-thou my sister see.

dû mûst des vorwâre jên,
thou must of-it truly avow,

daz nî wart kein schôner wîp.
that never was any fairer woman.

sie mochte wol eines koninges wîp
she might well a king's wife

wesin âne lastir.‘
be without shame.‘

„wie heizet dîne swestir?“
„how is-called thy sister?“

‚geselle, sie ist Îsalde genant.‘
‚companion, she is Isalde named.‘

dô wênte der hêre Tristrant
then thought the lord Tristrant

daz sie on hête irkorn.
that she him had chosen.

he dâchte „ich habe Îsaldin vlorn:
he thought „I have Isalde lost:

Îsaldin habe ich wedir vunden.“
Isalde have I again found.“

in den selbin stundin
at the same hours

quam he daz her sie sach.
came he that he her saw.

îdoch zwâre her nî en sprach,
yet truly he never — spoke,

he wuste schôner wîp wen sie.
he knew fairer woman than her.

vor wâr mag ich daz sagin hie:
for true may I that say here:

Dô sie von dannen gîngen,
When they from thence went,

bî den hendin sie sich vîngen,
by the hands they each-other caught,

Tristrant unde Kehenis.
Tristrant and Kehenis.

der kûne degin und gewis
the bold warrior and certain

vrâgin dô begunde,
to-ask then began,

wie daz orlôge stunde,
how the war stood,

ab man ûz der stad nicht quême.
if one out-of the town not came.

Kehenis sprach, ez hête
Kehenis spoke, it had

ir vîant sulche ritterschaft,
their enemy such knighthood,

daz he mit grôzes heres craft
that he with great host's power

sie sô starke sûchte,
them so strongly sought,

daz sie on nicht bestrîten mochten.
that they him not fight might.

der edele Rîôle ir herre,
the noble Riole their lord,

der jaget vor den andern verre,
he hunts before the others far,

[warten,] ab in nîman torre bestân.
[to-wait,] if him no-one dare attack.

nû ist under uns kein man
now is among us no man

der hin ûz torste komen:
who hence out dared come:

daz hân sie alle wol vornomen
that have they all well heard

und rîten swie sie wellin.‘
and ride however they will.‘

Tristrant dô sînen sellin
Tristrant then his companion

gar vlîziglîche bat
wholly diligently asked

daz her im hulfe ûz der stat
that he him should-help out-of the town

des morgenes vor tage.
in-the morning before day.

Kehenis sprach ‚ich wil dir sagin:
Kehenis spoke ‚I will to-thee say:

ez ist vorlabit und vorsworn,
it is pledged and sworn,

die wîl die vînde sîn dâ vorn,
the while the enemies are there before,

daz die porte nicht wirt ûf getân.‘
that the gate not becomes up done.‘

dô manete in Tristrant sân
then reminded him Tristrant straightway

der trûwe die her im gap
of-the faith which he to-him gave

daz he im dorch geselleschaft
that he him for companionship

ûz der stad hulfe vrû:
out-of the town should-help early:

daz muste Kehenis [zu hant] tûn.
that must Kehenis [at once] do.

Geloubit mir, ich wil ûch sagin:
Believe me, I will to-you say:

des morgens do ez begunde tagin,
in-the morning when it began to-dawn,

Tristrant [balde] zu velde quam.
Tristrant [quickly] to field came.

Rîôlen wolde he bestân
Riole would he attack

und hîlt ûf einer warte.
and halted upon a lookout.

dô sach her in komen harte
then saw he him come very

verre von dem gesinde.
far from the household.

dô wart der grêve ouch innen
then became the count also aware

Tristrandes an dem velde:
of-Tristrant on the field:

daz was im harte seldin
that was to-him very seldom

dâr î bevorn geschên.
there ever before happened.

dô wolde her besên,
then would he see,

ab her in torste bestân.
if he him dared attack.

dô kârte her kein in sân
then turned he toward him straightway

und îlete im swinde enkegin.
and hastened to-him swiftly toward.

dô reit ouch zû dem degin
then rode also to the warrior

Tristrant der werde.
Tristrant the worthy.

he stach in zû der erdin:
he thrust him to the earth:

obir in her zu hant reit
over him he at once rode

und twang in umme sicherheit.
and forced him about surety.

ich sage ûch wêrlîche
I tell you truly

daz her in vîentlîchen
that he him hostilely

dicke ûf den helm slûk:
often upon the helmet struck:

den schilt zuheu her im genûg.
the shield hewed-asunder he him enough.

dô muste he sichern dorch nôt,
then must he give-surety for need,

wen he vorchte sêre den tôd.
for he feared sorely the death.

sîne trûwe he Tristrande gap
his faith he to-Tristrant gave

daz he quême in die stad
that he came into the town

und wêre sîn gefangen
and were his captive

und nicht quême dannen
and not came thence

und tête swaz her in hîze
and did whatever he him bade

unde des nicht lîze
and it not left

dorch keiner hande ding;
for any kind-of thing;

und was ouch vrô der jungeling
and was also glad the youth

daz her mit dem lîbe entgîng.
that he with the life escaped.

Tristrant in togentlîche entvîng.
Tristrant him virtuously received.

Dô quâmen des [selbin] grêven man,
Then came the [same] count's men,

daz sie soldin habin vor getân,
what they should have before done,

und beschuttin iren herren.
and shielded their lord.

Tristrant der vlouch nicht verre,
Tristrant he fled not far,

îdoch muste her entwîchen.
yet must he yield.

dô sûchtin ritterlîchen
then sought knightly

die vîande die stat.
the enemies the town.

dô sie des stormes wordin sat,
when they of-the storm became sated,

dô kârtin sie alle wedere.
then turned they all back.

Rîôle der grêve bedirwe,
Riole the count worthy,

in die stat quam her aleine
into the town came he alone

(sîne trûwe die was reine)
(his faith it was pure)

und ted swaz he solde tûn.
and did whatever he should do.

dô sprach im sîn meistir zû,
then spoke to-him his master to,

Tristrant der degin wîse
Tristrant the warrior wise

‚ir mûzet die stad [wol] spîsen
‚you must the town [well] provision

zu schôner hûte siben nacht,
at fair keeping seven nights,

und wirt uns hûte nicht brâcht
and (if)-becomes to-us today not brought

beide wîn unde korn,
both wine and grain,

so beschauwet ir den tiefsten torm
so behold you the deepest tower

der in der stat ergin is:
which in the town anywhere is:

des sît sichir und gewis.‘
of-it be sure and certain.‘

Rîôle was ein stolz man:
Riole was a proud man:

im dûchte he soldes lastir hân,
to-him seemed he should-of-it shame have,

ab her in den torm quême.
if he into the tower came.

he gedâchte daz her nême
he thought that he would-take

an der spîse lîber den schaden.
in the food rather the harm.

des hîz her im dare tragen
for-it bade he for-him thither carry

und spîse alsô vele holin,
and food so much fetch,

daz sie ir genûg hêtin wole
that they of-it enough had well

zu mê denne sechs wochen.
for more than six weeks.

daz woldin an in hân gerochin
that would on them have avenged

des koninges vîande
the king’s enemies

und entbotin im zu schandin,
and sent-word to-him to shame,

her enlîze den grêven Rîôlen,
he unless-released the count Riole,

sie woldin im zustôrin
they would for-him destroy

die stad des morgenes vrô;
the town in-the morning early;

und entboten im dar zû,
and sent-word to-him there to,

hîlde her in icht mê lange,
(if)-held he him aught more long,

sîn lebin wêre vorgangin
his life were passed

und aller die dar wêrin inne;
and of-all who there were within;

wen sie woldin die stad gewinnen
for they would the town win

und ir keinen lâzin genesin.
and of-them none let survive.

‚nû sal uns got gnêdig wesin!'
‚now shall to-us God gracious be!'

sprach der kûne Tristrant dô
spoke the bold Tristrant then

‚îdoch wirt dorch keine drô
‚yet becomes for any threat

der grêve Rîôle ledig nît,
the count Riole free not,

ez sî in leit adir lîp.'
it be to-them sorrowful or dear.'

The Battle before Karahes

v

Two of Havelin's sister's sons arrive with two hundred knights and food for twelve weeks, and the king bids everyone obey Tristrant. When the besiegers come on, Tristrant leaves the king in the town with a hundred knights, lays the two nephews in ambush, and rides out with Kehenis and two hundred men; twice he gives way and draws the pursuit onto an ambush. When Nampetenis takes Kehenis prisoner, Tristrant frees him, and when the king charges with his banner, crying Karahes, the besiegers flee. Havelin gives Tristrant command over his kingdom, and Tristrant makes the peace. Fearing he will leave, Kehenis urges the match with his sister, and the marriage is made, but for more than a year Isalde is not his wife in deed, and she bears it without grudge.

Dô dez Tristrant gesprach.
When it Tristrant spoke.

dô quam dem koninge [eine] boteschaft
then came to-the king [a] message

von zwên sînen swestir sonen,
from two his sister's sons,

sie wêren im zu hulfe komen
they were to-him to help come

mit zwên hundert rittern gûten.
with two hundred knights good.

sie brâchten in ir hûte
they brought in their keeping

ire spîse mit in
their food with them

daz sie dâ mochten sîn
that they there might be

zwelf wochen adir mê.
twelve weeks or more.

die wârin im komen obir sê
they were to-him come over sea

und retin itzunt zû der stad.
and rode now to the town.

Tristrant dô den koning bat
Tristrant then the king asked

daz her sie wolde schône entvân.
that he them would fairly receive.

do begunde die koning gân
then began the king to-go

den hêren selbe engegene
to-the lords himself toward

mit grôzer menege
with great company

und entvîng mit êren sîne mâge.
and received with honors his kinsmen.

nu en darf nîman vrâgin,
now — needs no-one ask,

wie schône her sie entvînge.
how fairly he them received.

eir dô icht lange irgînge,
before then aught long passed,

do begunde sînen vrûnden
then began to-his friends

der koning selbe kunden
the king himself to-announce

swaz Tristrant hâte getân
whatever Tristrant had done

und daz her zû im wolde hân
and that he of him would have

rât umme sîne nôt.
counsel about his distress.

sîme sone her gebôt
to-his son he commanded

und bat mâge unde man
and asked kinsmen and men

daz sie im wêrin undirtân;
that they to-him were subject;

und sprach, swer des icht lîze
and spoke, whoever it aught left

daz in Tristrant tûn hîze,
that him Tristrant do bade,

der en gunde im sîner êren niet:
he — granted him of-his honor not:

daz was den hêren allen lîp.
that was to-the lords all dear.

Dô der koning irkande
When the king knew

daz sîne vîande
that his enemies

ir gelobede wolden leistin,
their promise would perform,

dô hîz Tristrant ir meistir
then bade Tristrant their master

die ritter sich in die hosin schûn
the knights themselves into the hose put

und ire halsberge ane tûn
and their hauberks on do

und ire helme vaste ûf binden.
and their helmets firmly up bind.

he sprach ‚sie sollin uns vinden
he spoke ‚they shall us find

an deme velde, ab got wil,
on the field, if God will,

er sî wênig adir vil.‘
of-them be few or many.‘

als her gebôt daz was getân:
as he commanded that was done:

zu samene quâmen sie gegân
to together came they going

ûf einen hof, an eine stad.
onto a court, to a place.

Tristrant dô die hêren bat
Tristrant then the lords asked

daz sie im alle volgin woldin
that they him all follow would

dâ sie vechtin soldin.
where they fight should.

ûz der stad her dô reit;
out-of the town he then rode;

dô lîz der jungeling gemeit
then let the youth glad

daz volg haldin vor der stat.
the folk halt before the town.

sînen hêren her dô bat
his lord he then asked

daz her dâ heime belibe
that he there at-home remained

und hundert ritter mit ime
and hundred knights with him

in gûten halsbergen
in good hauberks

unde swaz er werbin
and whatever he gather

des volges ime mochte
of-the folk to-him might

daz zu vechtin tochte
that to fight availed

mit kolben und mit gêren
with clubs and with javelins

und mit buckelêren,
and with bucklers,

mit helbarten unde spern.
with halberds and spears.

ein michel teil ward der
a great part were those

die scharfe swert trûgen
who sharp swords carried

und grôze slege dar mete slûgin.
and great blows there with struck.

he lîz dâ manchin stâlhût,
he left there many-a steel-hat,

dar undir manchin helt gût.
there under many-a hero good.

kûner burgâre
bold burghers

die wol gewâpnet wâren
who well armed were

mit gûten halsbergin,
with good hauberks,

der vorgaz er nergin.
those forgot he nowhere.

he lîz dâr ouch gûte schutzen
he left there also good archers

die im dar zû wordin nutze,
who to-him there to became useful,

ab her ûf sie worde geslagen
if he upon them were struck

daz sie in ûf soldin haben.
that they him up should hold.

her hîlt dâ nicht lange.
he halted there not long.

vorbaz legete he dannen
further laid he thence

einen des koninges swester sone
one of-the king's sister's sons

und halb die mit im wâren komen;
and half who with him were come;

und legete aber einen
and laid again one

mit dem andern teile
with the other part

vorbaz von der stad.
further from the town.

alle mit ên andir her sie bat
all with each other he them asked

daz sie stille lêgin
that they still lay

und nicht dannen quêmen,
and not thence came,

her en hîze sie daz selbe tû,
he unless bade them that same do,

adir in sprêche Kurnevâl zû.
or to-them spoke Kurneval to.

Mit zwên hundert helmin
With two hundred helmets

reit he dô selbe
rode he then himself

und Kehenis mit im dâ hin:
and Kehenis with him there hence:

daz was ein manlîcher sin.
that was a manly sense.

dô sie on sô nâhe quâmen
when they to-them so near came

daz sie si [gar] wol vornâmen,
that they them [wholly] well perceived,

zu helin sie sich dâ begunden,
to conceal they themselves there began,

zesamene sie stunden.
together they stood.

und jene wordin ir geware
and those became of-them aware

und hûbin sich ze hant dare,
and raised themselves at once thither,

ein teil ungewâpenôt:
a part unarmed:

des kôs vil manchir den tôt.
for-it chose very many-a the death.

wen dese hîlten stille
for these held still

(bôse was ir wille)
(wicked was their will)

biz sie nebin sie quâmen.
until they beside them came.

die schilde sie dô vor sich nâmen
the shields they then before themselves took

und hurten vaste undir sie.
and charged hard among them.

dô begunden jene [weg] vlîn.
then began those [away] to-flee.

dô ted in Tristrant grôzin schadin:
then did to-them Tristrant great harm:

he vîng in vîrzig ritter abe
he caught from-them forty knights off

âne die her ir irslûg.
besides those he of-them slew.

ich rûche ir was doch genûg
I reckon of-them was yet enough

die in dar nâch bestundin.
who them there after attacked.

die entphîngen manche wundin
they received many-a wound

biz sie ez doch behartin
until they it yet endured

daz sie in dannen kârtin.
that they them thence turned.

Tristrant der kûne helt dô
Tristrant the bold hero then

vil listiglîchen vlô
very cunningly fled

sô daz he nichtes nicht vorlôs;
so that he nothing at-all lost;

ouch wart he [gar] schiere getrôst
also became he [wholly] soon comforted

von eime des koninges nebin:
by one of-the king's nephews:

he wart gejagit ûf den degin
he was hunted onto the warrior

in die hûte, dâ er lach.
into the ambush, where he lay.

Tristrant im zû sprach
Tristrant to-him to spoke

und hîz in daz he sprankte.
and bade him that he should-gallop.

der hêre dô vorhankte
the lord then slackened-rein

sîme rosse und lîz ez dare gên
to-his horse and let it thither go

‚vâch du desin, ich slâ den!'
‚catch thou this-one, I strike that-one!'

rîfen sie alle
called they all

mit grôzes heres schalle:
with great host's din:

daz enwoldin sie nicht vormîden,
that would they not avoid,

sie vuchten mit grôzem nîde
they fought with great enmity

kein den hêren Tristrant.
against the lord Tristrant.

manchez leben wart geant,
many-a life was ended,

eir der strît irgînge.
before the strife passed.

abir sie in abe vîngen
again they from-them off caught

wol drîzig ritter adir mê.
well thirty knights or more.

dô lâgin sie recht als daz vê,
then lay they right as the cattle,

manch ritter, an dem wale.
many-a knight, on the battlefield.

dâr vîlen helde âne zale
there fell heroes without number

vor hêren Tristrandes swerte:
before lord Tristrant's sword:

manchen helm herte
many-a helmet hard

her mit dem orte zubrach.
he with the point broke-asunder.

von sînen handen gelach
by his hands lay

manch kûner wîgant.
many-a bold warrior.

dô muste abir Tristrant
then must again Tristrant

von dannen entwîchen.
from thence yield.

dô vlôch he ritterlîchen
then fled he knightly

an den andern grâven.
to the other count.

Tristrant in ûz der lâge
Tristrant him out-of the ambush

menlîchin ouch sprengin hîz.
manfully also gallop bade.

der hêre des nicht enlîz,
the lord it not left-off,

wen her was ein kûne man.
for he was a bold man.

selbe her sîn zêchin nam
himself he his ensign took

und kârte in den kreiz wît.
and turned into the circle wide.

dô wart die herteste strît
then was the hardest strife

den mannes ouge î gesach:
which man's eye ever saw:

grôz mort dâr geschach
great slaughter there happened

dô die jungelinge
when the youths

brâchen dorch die ringe
broke through the rings

mit der sper orte.
with the spears' points.

verre man irhôrte
far one heard

die swertslege schellen
the sword-blows ring

die dâ slûgen die snellen.
which there struck the swift-ones.

Man saget von Dietrîche:
One tells of Dietrich:

dâ vacht sô [gar] vreislîche
there fought so [wholly] terribly

Kehenis und Tristrant,
Kehenis and Tristrant,

daz Dieterîch noch Hildebrant
that Dietrich nor Hildebrand

nî sô vele mochte getûn.
never so much might do.

Tristrant der gedâchte dô,
Tristrant he thought then,

ab in der koning quême,
if to-them the king came,

daz he den sege von im nême.
that he the victory from him would-take.

her gesach ûz dem strîte
he saw out-of the strife

Kurnevâlen [den] bat he rîten,
Kurneval [whom] bade he ride,

daz he den koning hîze komen.
that he the king bade come.

dô wart bî dem zôme genomen
then was by the bridle taken

der mêre degin Kehenis;
the famed warrior Kehenis;

daz ted [der stolze] Nampêtenis:
that did [the proud] Nampetenis:

der was ein harte kûne degin.
he was a very bold warrior.

den helt vûrte he aftir wegin,
the hero led he off away,

he twang in umme sicherheit:
he forced him about surety:

daz was Tristrande [rechte] leit.
that was to-Tristrant [right] sorrowful.

sô schîre sô her daz vornam,
as soon as he that perceived,

sîme gesellin he zu hulfe quam
to-his companion he to help came

mit gar kreftigin slegin.
with wholly mighty blows.

Nampêtenis der kûne degin
Nampetenis the bold warrior

lîz dô Kehenîsen.
let then Kehenis.

Tristrant der wîse
Tristrant the wise

abir in den strît kârte:
again into the strife turned:

he machte helme scharte
he made helmets notched

und manchin blûtigen rant.
and many-a bloody rim.

Kehenis der wîgant
Kehenis the warrior

machte manchin weisen;
made many-a orphan;

ouch teten dô grôze vreise
also did then great terror

des koninges swestirsone:
the king's sister's-sons:

des tagis hâten sie benomen
of-the day had they taken

iren lîp vil manchir vrauwin.
her life very from-many-a lady.

sie gîngen vaste hauwin
they went hard to-hew

und begundin helme schrôten.
and began helmets to-cleave.

von in wordin vil tôte
by them became many dead

und ouch gewunter lûte vel:
and also of-wounded people many:

sie kunden nîtlîche spel.
they knew hostile games.

dô vacht mit grôzem nîde
then fought with great enmity

Tristrant und die sîne.
Tristrant and the his.

dô wordin in irslagin
then became to-them slain

die ros die sie sulden tragin.
the horses which them should carry.

dô stundin sie zu fûze.
then stood they on foot.

‚âne unsern dang wir mûzen
‚against our will we must

umme den lîp [sêre] vechtin‘
for the life [sorely] fight‘

sprâchin dô die gûtin knechte
spoke then the good knights

‚wir enmogen nicht entflîn:
‚we may not escape:

solde ez sich nâch irem willen zîn,
(if)-should it itself after their will draw,

sô quême wir nicht hinnen.‘
so would-come we not hence.‘

von den jungelingen
by the youths

vîlen dô vil wîgande
fell then many warriors

mit verschrôtenem rande
with cleft rim

und mit zuhowen brunnin
and with hewed mail

daz dar ûz quam gerunnin
that there out came running

von den lûten daz verch.
from the people the life.

dô wart manich halsberch
then was many-a hauberk

mit nîde durchhowen.
with enmity through-hewn.

ouch mochte man dâ schowen
also might one there behold

helme vorschrôten
helmets cleft

und ouch manchin tôten
and also many-a dead

in des grâven Rîôles here.
in the count Riole's host.

dô wart ein grôz lebirmere
then was a great curdled-sea

gemachit von dem blûte
made from the blood

daz sie dar inne wûten
that they there in waded

an manchir stat biz an die knî.
in many-a place until to the knee.

wer gesach dô î
who saw then ever

alsô grôzin mort getân,
so great slaughter done,

als Tristrant ted der kûne man?
as Tristrant did the bold man?

swie he wênig lûte habete,
however he few people had,

jene dô vorzagetin,
those then lost-heart,

dô sie sâgin die grôze nôt;
when they saw the great distress;

wen dô lag manch helt tôt
for then lay many-a hero dead

von Tristrande und Kehenîse.
by Tristrant and Kehenis.

den vogelin wart dâ ire spîse
to-the birds was there their food

ûf lange zît gegeben.
for long time given.

dô worfin des koninges nebin
then threw the king's nephews

ire schilt hinder sich
their shields behind themselves

und irhûbin einen solchen strît:
and raised a such strife:

mit beiden henden gîngen sie hauwen
with both hands went they to-hew

daz daz helle blût gunde tauwen
that the bright blood began to-drip

und manchir blûtes wart sô blôz,
and many-a of-blood became so bare,

daz her den tôt dâ von kôs.
that he the death there from chose.

dô râchin die helde gemeit
then avenged the heroes glad

ires ôhêmes leit
their uncle's sorrow

als ez gûten knechten wol gezam.
as it to-good knights well befitted.

dô vîl man obir man:
then fell one over man:

von dem blûte irlasch der melm.
from the blood was-quenched the dust.

dô wart manch schône helm
then was many-a fair helmet

dorchhauwin von den reckin:
through-hewn by the warriors:

swaz sie ir mit den eckin
whatever they of-them with the edges

irreichtin, daz was [alliz] vorlorn.
reached, that was [all] lost.

des koninges Havelînes zorn
the king Havelin's anger

râchin die kûnen helde dô
avenged the bold heroes then

daz des manch wart gar unvrô:
that of-it many-a became wholly unhappy:

sie wâren in gar gevêre.
they were to-them wholly hostile.

die ros lîfen lêre
the horses ran empty

dâ ûf dem gefilde.
there upon the field.

dô wordin die schilde
then became the shields

vorhauwin vaste vor der hant:
hewn hard before the hand:

dô viel manich wîgant.
then fell many-a warrior.

Dô quam sie der koning ane
Then came them the king on

mit eime michelîchen vanen.
with a great banner.

‚Karahes' her vaste rîf:
‚Karahes' he loudly called:

jener unheil nicht entslîf.
of-those misfortune not slept.

sie vorchten sich vil sêre
they feared themselves very sorely

und wânden daz velt wêre
and thought the field were

vul gûtir knechte.
full of-good knights.

dar umme lîzen sie ir vechtin
there for left they their fighting

und kârten mit vluchte dannen.
and turned with flight thence.

der hêren mit den mannen
of-the lords with the men

wart dô harte vele irslagin.
was then very many slain.

wolt irz hôren ich wil ez ûch sagin:
(if)-would you-it hear I will it to-you tell:

dô der strît ein ende nam,
when the strife an end took,

der koning [sich] begunde kêren dan
the king [himself] began to-turn thence

und reit wedir in die stad.
and rode back into the town.

die hêren he hîz unde bat
the lords he bade and asked

daz sie alle vor in quêmen
that they all before him came

und sîne rede vornêmen; 6090
and his speech heard;

und dankte in grôze,
and thanked them greatly,

den lieben hûsgenôzen
the dear house-fellows

und dem edelin Tristrande,
and the noble Tristrant,

daz her in sînem lande
that he in his land

gebôt gewaldiglîchen 6095
commanded mightily

obir al sîn koningrîche.
over all his kingdom.

sîne nebin die im wâren komen
his nephews who to-him were come

zu êren unde zû vromen
to honor and to gain

obir mer zu helfe,
over sea to help,

den lônete he mit gelfe; 6100
them rewarded he with rejoicing;

mit êren sande he sie zu lande,
with honors sent he them to land,

mit in zogen ir wîgande.
with them went their warriors.

Tristrant al dâr beleip,
Tristrant all there remained,

die sûne he zusamene treib
the reconciliation he together drove

al nâch des koninges êren.
all after the king's honor.

dô vorchte gar sêre
then feared wholly sorely

Kehenis der snelle
Kehenis the swift

daz im sîn geselle
that from-him his companion

Tristrant entvarin wolde.
Tristrant go-away would.

he gedâchte daz he solde
he thought that he should

im sô heimlîch werdin,
to-him so intimate become,

daz her ummer gerne
that he ever gladly

mit im zu Karahes belebe:
with him at Karahes should-remain:

er dâchte daz im dâ von beklebe
he thought that to-him there from would-cleave

êre unde sâligheit.
honor and blessedness.

he sprach ‚geselle gemeit,
he spoke ‚companion glad,

dû bist mîme vater lîp:
thou art to-my father dear:

war umme betestû in nît
what for askest-thou him not

daz he dir mîne swestir gebe?‘
that he to-thee my sister give?‘

„daz tête ich gerne“ sprach der degen,
„that would-do I gladly“ spoke the warrior,

„wuste ich, daz he daz wolde tû,
„(if)-knew I, that he that would do,

slûge denne ungelucke zû
(if)-struck then misfortune to

daz he des nicht entête
that he it not did

dar umme ich in bête,
there for I him asked,

sô vorlore ich mînen dînist.“
so would-lose I my service.“

‚wie nû ab ez im lîp ist
‚how now if it to-him dear is

und he sie dir gerne gêbe?‘
and he her to-thee gladly would-give?‘

„wêrlîche ich sie [ouch] mit willen nême“
„truly I her [also] with will would-take“

sprach der hêre Tristrant.
spoke the lord Tristrant.

Kehenis sagete ze hant
Kehenis told at once

die rede sînem vater dô.
the speech to-his father then.

der antworte ime sô
he answered him so

als Tristrant hâte getân.
as Tristrant had done.

Kehenis begunde sân
Kehenis began straightway

die vrîe zu samene trîben
the wooing to together to-drive

daz die vrauwe ze eime wîbe
that the lady as a wife

wart gegebin Tristrande.
was given to-Tristrant.

mit deme edelin wîgande
with the noble warrior

was sie mêr denne ein jâr
was she more than a year

(daz hôrte ich sagin vor wâr)
(that heard I tell for true)

daz sie nî wart sîn wîp:
that she never became his wife:

daz vortrûg die vrauwe âne nît.
that bore the lady without grudge.

The Second Isalde

VI

When a puddle splashes Isalde of Karahes higher than any knight's hand has gone, Kehenis learns that she is still a maiden. Her father would kill Tristrant, but Kehenis first renounces their friendship. Tristrant answers that a lady keeps his hound better than his wife keeps him, and offers to prove it. The two sail to Cornwall, to Tinas at Litan, and Tristrant sends word through Tinas to the queen: she is to have Mark hunt at Blankenland and ride there in state, and from a thornbush by the road he will shoot a twig into her palfrey's mane, so that she halts and has the hound led past for Kehenis to see.

Îsalde des ouch nî gesprach,
Isalde of-it also never spoke,

wen eines tagis dô [daz] geschach
except on-one day when [that] happened

daz der koning und die koningîn
that the king and the queen

und Tristrant und daz wîp sîn
and Tristrant and the wife his

unde Kehenis dâ mete
and Kehenis there with

ûf eime tîfen wege retin
upon a deep way rode

zu Karahes nâ bî der stad.
to Karahes near by the town.

Îsaldin pfert dô trat
Isalde's horse then stepped

in einen gereinetin pfûl
into a filled puddle

daz ir daz wazzir ûf vûr
that to-her the water up went

bî dem knî undirz hemede.
by the knee under-the shift.

sie sprach ‚wazzir, dû bist vromede,
she spoke ‚water, thou art strange,

daz dir mûzze misselingen.
that to-thee may fail.

wie getorstestû î gespringen
how daredst-thou ever leap

sô verre undir mîn gewant
so far under my garment

dar noch nî ritters hant
where yet never knight's hand

getorste komen, noch en quam?‘
dared come, nor — came?‘

ir brûder Kehenis daz vornam
her brother Kehenis that heard

und sprach, des en wêre nît.
and spoke, it — were not.

dô was der vrauwen leit geschît
then was to-the lady sorrow happened

daz her daz hâte gehôrt.
that he that had heard.

îdôch sô sprach sie die wort:
yet so spoke she the words:
,daz ich sage, daz ist wâr.‘
‚what I say, that is true.‘
„dû hâst doch mê denne ein jâr
„thou hast yet more than a year
gewesin bî dînem manne:
been by thy husband:
wie mochte ummir danne
how might ever then
icheine stad an dîme lîbe sîn,
any place on thy body be,
da enwêre des gesellin mîn
there unless-were of-the companion my
sîne hant gefaren obere:
his hand gone over:
dû sagest mir eine logene.“
thou tellest me a lie.“
,zwâr, es ist nicht gelogin:
‚truly, it is not lied:
dîn geselle ist sô wol gezogin,
thy companion is so well bred,
daz he mit sîner hant nî
that he with his hand never
quam obir mîn blôze knî.‘
came over my bare knee.‘
„so en worde dû nî sîn wîp?“
„so — became thou never his wife?“
,nein ich, sam mîn eigin lîp:
‚not I, by my own life:
sîn, noch keines man.“
his, nor any man's.“
dô was ez abir ungetân.
then was it however undone.

Kehenis sich nicht enthabete,
Kehenis himself not held-back,

sîme vater er clagete
to-his father he lamented

und allen sînen lîben holdin
and all his dear loyal-men

daz Tristrant nicht en wolde
that Tristrant not — would

zu wîbe sîne swestir.
as wife his sister.

he sprach ‚des habe wir lastir
he spoke ‚of-it have we shame

und ez sal im an den lîp gân,
and it shall to-him on the life go,

wen he hât ez umme daz getân,
for he has it for that done,

daz her sie wil lâzzin.‘
that he her will leave.‘

„sô muste uns got vorwâzzin,
„so may us God curse,

ab wir des ummir gestatin!“
if we it ever allowed!“

sô sprach der koning ir vatir.
so spoke the king her father.

‚reche wir daz al zu hant!‘
‚avenge we that all at once!‘

sprach dô Kehenis genant
spoke then Kehenis named

‚wie moge wir daz baz getû?‘
‚how may we that better do?‘

der koning nam dô dar zû
the king took then there to

beide mâge unde man,
both kinsmen and men,

als her in itzunt wolde slân
as-if he him now would slay

ûf dem wege dâr he reit.
upon the way where he rode.

daz was doch Kehenîse leit
that was yet to-Kehenis sorrowful

und bat in eine wîle twellin,
and asked him a while to-tarry,

‚wen he ist mîn geselle:
‚for he is my companion:

ich wil im wedirsagin ê
I will to-him renounce first

daz mîn êre nicht mit im zugê!‘
so-that my honor not with him go-to-nothing!‘

Wolt ir hôrin, waz he sprach
Would you hear, what he spoke

zu Tristrande dô her in gesach?
to Tristrant when he him saw?

‚geselle, ich wil ûch wedirsagin:
‚companion, I will to-you renounce:

ich en mag nicht mê getragin
I — may not more carry

zû ûch [keine] geselleschaft.‘
toward you [any] companionship.‘

„war umme daz?“ ‚ich enmag
„what for that?“ ‚I may

ûch nicht lengir holt sîn.‘
to-you not longer loyal be.‘

„dorch waz?“ ‚ir habet die swestir mîn
„for what?“ ‚you have the sister my

und uns alle geschant.‘
and us all shamed.‘

‚wâ mete?“ ‚waz solde daz genant?
‚where with?“ ‚what should that named?

ir wizzet ez wol.‘ „nein ich.“
you know it well.‘ „not I.“

‚sal ich ez sagin?‘ „daz ist mir lîp.“
‚shall I it say:‘ „that is to-me dear.“

‚daz mîn swestir, als sie vore was,
‚that my sister, as she before was,

noch ist maget.‘ „war umme daz?“
still is maiden.‘ „what for that?“

‚wir habin es lastir.‘ „nein, war an?“
‚we have of-it shame.‘ „no, where on?“

‚daz merket selbe!‘ „ich enkan.“
‚that mark yourself!‘ „I can-not.“

‚sal ich ez ûch sagin?‘ „alsô tût!“
‚shall I it to-you say:‘ „so do!“

‚wir wizzen wol ûwern mût:
‚we know well your mind:

ir wolt sie lâzin.‘ „ich enwil.“
you would her leave.‘ „I will-not.“

‚zwâr es wêre ûch wol zu vil:
‚truly it were to-you well too much:

sie ist als edele als ir.‘
she is as noble as you.‘

„hêre Kehenis, geloubit mir
„lord Kehenis, believe me

daz ich des nî mût gewan:
that I of-it never mind got:

von andern dingen ez quam,
from other things it came,

daz sie noch nî wart mîn wîp.“
that she yet never became my wife.“

‚wâ von?‘ „nein. ir habit des nît,
‚where from:‘ „no. you have of-it nothing,

ab ich ez ûch sage.“ ‚ich en hân.‘
if I it to-you tell.“ ‚I not have.‘

dô sagete im Tristrant sân
then told him Tristrant straightway

„ûwer swestir Îsalde
„your sister Isalde

hât mich sô nicht gehaldin,
has me so not held,

daz sie des icht wert sî
that she of-it at-all worthy be

daz sie mir aleine kome bî.“
that she to-me alone come by.“

‚sie hât doch trûwe?‘ „nein sie.“
‚she has yet faithfulness?‘ „not she.“

‚nû liget sie ûch doch bî:
‚now lies she to-you yet by:

waz solde sie mê hân getân?
what should she more have done?

sie lîz ûch selbe den rât hân,
she let you yourselves the counsel have,

daz ir têtet nâch ûwerm willen.‘
that you did after your will.‘

„ir solt ûwern zorn stillen,
„you shall your anger still,

ir enwizzet denne umme waz:
you unless-know then about what:

jâ helt eine vrauwe baz
yes holds a lady better

ein hundelîn dorch mînen willen
a little-dog for my will

obir lût und stille
over loud and still

den mich ûwir swestir hât getân:
than me your sister has done:

hîr um lât ûwirn zorn zugân
here for let your anger go-down

und volgit mir: ich brenge ûch dar
and follow me: I bring you thither

daz ir wol werdit gewar
that you well become aware

daz ich ûch wâr habe gesagit,
that I to-you true have said,

und ab ich lîge, daz ir habit
and if I lie, that you have

ûwir vorderunge ûf mich."
your claim upon me."

Kehenis sprach ‚daz lobe ich.'
Kehenis spoke ‚that promise I.'

Dô muste Tristrant vil lîse
Then must Tristrant very softly

geloben [sîme gesellin] Kehenîse
promise [to-his companion] Kehenis

und sîme vater bî trûwin
and to-his father by faith

daz he wedir quême zû der vrawen
that he back came to the lady

vil schiere und sie sêge,
very soon and her saw,

und ob Kehenis jêge
and if Kehenis declared

daz he nicht wâr hête,
that he not true had,

daz er im denne tête
that he to-him then did

swaz he selbe wolde.
whatever he himself would.

Tristrant dô balde solde
Tristrant then quickly should

varen sîne strâzen.
go his road.

do enwolde des nicht lâzen
then would it not leave

Kehenis, her zôch mete.
Kehenis, he went with.

zu dem sê quâmen sie geretin;
to the sea came they ridden;

dannen vûren sie mit schiffen
thence went they with ships

biz sie quâmen geslichen
until they came stealing

zu Lîtân dâ die borg was.
to Litan where the castle was.

dô entphîng sie Tînas
then received them Tinas

sô ez hêren wol gezam.
as it to-lords well befitted.

Tristrant in dô bî sich nam
Tristrant him then by himself took

und begunde im clagen sîne nôt.
and began to-him to-lament his distress.

sîner vrauwin her entbôt,
to-his lady he sent-word,

daz he komen wêre
that he come were

und sagete ir daz mêre:
and told her the tidings:

sîn lîp stunde ûf der wâge,
his life stood upon the balance,

daz sie dorch ir genâde
that she for her grace

im daz zu lîbe tête
to-him that for love did

und den koning bête
and the king asked

daz he vullin zwêne tage
that he full two days

zu Blankinlande rite jagin
to Blankinland should-ride to-hunt

und sie dare wolde komen
and she thither would come

(daz mochte im harte sêre vromen)
(that might him very sorely profit)

sô sie hêrlîchest mochte
as she most-lordly might

und sprach ‚mir entochte
and spoke ‚to-me availed

die reise endelîche nît,
the journey finally not,

wen ez wêre mir harte lîp
for it were to-me very dear

daz sie quême rechte hêrlich:
that she should-come right lordly:

dâ mete sal sie irneren mich,
there with shall she save me,

ich mûz andirs tôt wesin:
I must otherwise dead be:

ich mag mit nichte genesin,
I may by no-means survive,

sie enwille mîn genâde habin.
she unless-will of-me mercy have.

nû merke, vrûnt, ich wil dir sagin
now mark, friend, I will to-thee tell

recht als ez mir ist komen:
right as it to-me is come:

ich hoffe ez solle mir vromen.‘
I hope it shall me profit.‘

Tristrant dô begunde
Tristrant then began

Tînas daz mêre kundin
to-Tinas the tidings to-announce

recht als ez im [zû] komen was,
right as it to-him [to] come was,

und sprach ‚mîn lîbir vrûnt Tînas,
and spoke ‚my dear friend Tinas,

dû hâst mir lîbes vele getân:
thou hast to-me of-love much done:

nû sol ez an dînen gnâdin stân,
now shall it on thy graces stand,

daz ich abir genîze dîn,
that I again enjoy of-thee,

daz die lîbe vrauwe mîn
that the dear lady my

mir behalde mînen lîp,
for-me keep my life,

wen sie mir vor alle wîp
for she to-me before all women

î was unde ummir is:
ever was and ever is:

des selbin bis an mir gewis!‘
of-the same be on me certain!‘

„sal ich?“ ‚jâ, dû machst wol.‘
„shall I?“ ‚yes, thou mayst well.‘

„vil gerne sie [daz] tûn sol
„very gladly she [that] do shall

alliz daz dir ist lîp.“
all that to-thee is dear.“

‚ich hoffe, sie en lâzze es nît,
‚I hope, she — leave it not,

sie schaffe die reise,
she arrange the journey,

vornimet sie dese freise
(if)-perceives she this peril

daz ez mir an den lîp gât:
that it to-me on the life goes:

von ir ez sich irhabin hât,
from her it itself raised has,

hîr umme, daz ich mich vormaz
here for, that I myself presumed

daz sie mînen hunt hîlte baz
that she my dog held better

beide stille und obir lût,
both still and over loud,

wen ein andir vrawe ir trût:
than an other lady her beloved:

daz sal nû an mir werdin schîn.‘
that shall now on me become shown.‘

„jâ, dû salt den lîp dîn
„yes, thou shalt the life thy

von desin dingen wol behabin.“
from these things well keep.“

‚ich hoffez, wiltû ez ir sagin,
‚I hope-it, (if)-wilt-thou it to-her tell,

daz sie des nicht enlâze.
that she it not leave.

sage ir, bî der strâze
tell her, by the road

dar sie hene rîten sol
where she hence ride shall

(daz ist ir kundig harte wol)
(that is to-her known very well)

dâr steit eine hirzwarte;
there stands a deer-lookout;

dâ sal sie sich harte
there shall she herself very

vlîzlîchen umme sên
diligently about look

unde bî dem wege spên
and by the way spy

einen gar dicken dorn:
a wholly thick thorn-bush:

den habe ich dâ zû ûz irkorn.
that have I there to out chosen.

daz wir dar inne wollin sîn.
that we there in will be.

swen sô die lîbe vrauwe mîn
whenever so the dear lady my

nebin uns dan komen is,
beside us then come is,

sô wil ich schîzen ein rîs
so will I shoot a twig

mîner vrawen zeldêre in den manen,
my lady's palfrey into the mane,

sô sal sie denne stille haben
so shall she then still halt

und sal daz selbe hundelîn
and shall the same little-dog

vûren dorch den willen mîn
lead for the will my

sô daz mîn geselle sage
so that my companion say

daz ich im wâr gesaget habe.‘
that I to-him true said have.‘

The Hound in the Litter

VII

Tinas shows the ring to Mark at his board game, and Isalde arranges the hunt. From the thornbush Kehenis watches the train pass: cooks, hunters, relics, then ladies, each riding beside a squire or knight. He takes the fair Gymele for the queen, finds Brangene fairer still, then sees the hound carried in a golden litter and the queen herself, bright as a second sun, riding alone, for she has sent Antret off on a fruitless errand. Tristrant shoots a twig into her horse's mane; she halts, sends word to Mark that she is unwell and will lodge apart across the water, and fondles the hound, and Kehenis releases Tristrant from his pledge. She bids the birds come and sing to her at Blankenwald, so that Tristrant learns where to find her.

Ouch hîz he die koningîn betin
Also bade he the queen ask

daz sie vil vrauwen brêchte mete,
that she many ladies should-bring with,

gar wol gezîret
wholly well adorned

und hêrlîche gebalîret
and lordly arrayed

als einer koninginne zême
as to-a queen befitted

und hobeschlîchen quême:
and courtly came:

daz wêre im inniglîchen lîp.
that were to-him inwardly dear.

her Tînas des nicht en lîz,
lord Tinas it not — left-undone,

he sagete daz der koningîn.
he told that to-the queen.

Tristrant ir ein vingerlîn
Tristrant to-her a little-ring

zu wârzêchene sante
as true-token sent

daz sie vor vil wol irkante,
which she before very well knew,

wen sie hâtiz im gegebin.
for she had-it to-him given.

dô reit Tînas achtir wegin.
then rode Tinas off away.

dô her zu Tintanjôl quam,
when he to Tintajol came,

dô vant he den koning lobesam
then found he the king praiseworthy

sitzen obir einem brete
sit over a board

und die koningîn dâ mete
and the queen there with

und wolden iezû mîlen.
and would now play.

do begunde her sêre îlen
then began he sorely to-hasten

und sprach, he wolde mit spelin.
and spoke, he would with-them play.

dô greif he ûf daz bret zu vele
then grasped he onto the board too much

und dicker denne he solde,
and oftener than he should,

dorch daz die vrauwe wolde
for that the lady would

des vingerlînes werde geware.
of-the little-ring become aware.

dô sach die koninginne dare
then looked the queen thither

und irkante balde dez vingerlîn.
and knew quickly the little-ring.

dô muste des spelis genûg sîn.
then must of-the play enough be.

nû hôret wie sie ez ane vîng:
now hear how she it about went:

an ire heimelîcheit sie gîng.
to her privacy she went.

nâch Tînase sie [vil drâte] sante
after Tinas she [very quickly] sent

und vrâgete umme Tristrante,
and asked about Tristrant,

ab her icht wuste, wâ he wêre.
if he aught knew, where he were.

‚jâ ich, frowe hêre,
‚yes I, lady lordly,

ich lîz in hûte dâr ich was.‘
I left him today where I was.‘

„ôwê, lîbe frûnt Tînas,
„alas, dear friend Tinas,

wie gehât he sich?“ ‚vil wol.‘
how fares he himself?“ ‚very well.‘

„wil he mich sên?“ ‚jâ, her sol
„will he me see?“ ‚yes, he shall

ûch, vrauwe, âne zwîvel sên.‘
you, lady, without doubt see.‘

„sage, wenne sal daz geschên?“
„say, when shall that happen?“

daz vingerlîn he ir dô gab
the little-ring he to-her then gave

und sagete ir die batschaft
and told her the message

als ir entbôt Tristrant der hêre.
as to-her sent-word Tristrant the lord.

he irmanete sie vil sêre
he urged her very sorely

daz sie daz alliz tête
that she that all did

swes sie ir lîbe vrûnt bête.
whatever her her dear friend asked.

Des wart die koninginne vrô:
Of-it became the queen glad:

mit dem koninge schûf sie dô
with the king arranged she then

daz he nâch den hêren sante
that he after the lords sent

und reit zu Blankenlante
and rode to Blankenland

jagin mit grôzir rittirschaft.
to-hunt with great knighthood.

swaz es zu Tînase getraf,
whatever it to Tinas concerned,

daz geschûf he als ez solde sîn.
that arranged he as it should be.

ouch bereite sich die koningîn
also readied herself the queen

mit grôzzem vlîze dar zû.
with great diligence there to.

des andern morgenes vrû
on-the other morning early

quam der hêre Tristrant
came the lord Tristrant

und Kehenis der wîgant
and Kehenis the warrior

in den dornpusch gegangin.
into the thorn-bush going.

dâ wârin sie nicht [gar] lange,
there were they not [wholly] long,

dô quâmen geloufin die koche
then came running the cooks

mit pfannen und mit topfen
with pans and with pots

und die lûte mit der spise.
and the people with the food.

dô dûchte [wol] Kehenîse
then seemed [well] to-Kehenis

daz der vil wêre.
that of-them many were.

dô quâmen die butiglêre
then came the butlers

und die daz brôt gâben,
and those-who the bread gave,

zu hant dô die jeger quâmen
at once then the hunters came

mit harte vil hunden.
with very many hounds.

dar nâch in korzin stundin
there after in short hours

quam des koninges kamergewant
came the king's chamber-gear

und daz heiligtûm zu hant.
and the relics at once.

dar nâch die cappellâne.
there after the chaplains.

do begunde der koning ze nâne.
then began the king to near.

die brâchte ritter harte vele
he brought knights very many

mit winden und mit vedirspele.
with greyhounds and with falcons.

Dô der koning vor obir quam,
When the king before over came,
der vrauwen kamergewant began
the lady's chamber-gear began
gân dar vor die warte.
to-go there before the lookout.
Kehenîsen vordûchte harte
to-Kehenis seemed-too-much very
daz sie sô vil habeten
that they so many had
knapen die mit in trabeten,
squires who with them trotted,
die des gewandes plâgen.
who of-the gear took-care.
die hêren dô gesâgin
the lords then saw
manche vrauwin hêrlîch.
many-a lady lordly.
dô hâte die koninginne rîch
then had the queen rich
ore reise geschicket alsô hêre,
her journey ordered so lordly,
daz î ein schône junchêre
that ever a fair young-lord
adir ein ritter gemeit
or a knight glad
mit einer vroun zusamen reit.
with a lady together rode.

die êrsten zwei retin dâ
the first two rode there

und ander zwei dar nâ
and other two there after

alsô verre, daz ir wort
so far, that their words

nicht mê wordin dâ gehôrt:
not more became there heard:

sie sprâchin swaz sie woldin.
they spoke whatever they would.

die vrauwen wâren als sie soldin
the ladies were as they should

mit golde wol behangin
with gold well hung

und mit mentelin langen.
and with mantles long.

sô man sie beste veil vand.
as one them best for-sale found.

zierlich was ir gewand.
elegant was their garment.

ir hâr wol gebunden was.
their hair well bound was.

ir iegelîche was baz
of-them each was better

wen die andern getân.
than the others made.

ich bin des sicher, sundir wân:
I am of-it sure, without doubt:

sie hâten wol gezîret sich,
they had well adorned themselves,

manche vrauwe hêrlich
many-a lady lordly

reit in der koninginne schar.
rode in the queen's troop.

dô wordin sie einer gewar,
then became they of-one aware,
die was alsô rechte schône,
who was so rightly fair,
daz Kehenis der edele kûne
that Kehenis the noble bold
sprach zu dem gesellin sîn
spoke to the companion his
‚sich, hîr kumt die koningîn!'
‚see, here comes the queen!'
Tristrant sprach dô „nein sie nicht:
Tristrant spoke then „no she not:
sie enist nergin nâ sô lîcht
she is nowhere near so bright
sô mîn vrauwe die koningîn;
as my lady the queen;
doch wêre der selben sunnen schîn
yet were the same sun's shine
undir swarzen wulkin genûg."
under black clouds enough."
dô dûchte Kehenis ungefûg
then seemed to-Kehenis unfitting
daz icht schôners mochte gesîn;
that aught fairer might be;
wen he beschauwete sich dar în
for he beheld himself there in
als in ein lûtir spîgelglas.
as into a clear mirror-glass.
ich wil ûch sagin wie sie was:
I will to-you tell how she was:
sie hîz juncfrauwe Gymêle
she was-called maiden Gymele
von der Schitrîêle,
of the Schitriele,

bî ir reit her Galîag
by her rode lord Galiag

des grêven son von Mîlîag.
the count's son of Miliag.

die was daz schônste kind
she was the fairest child

daz eir noch sint
that before or since

von mûtir î geborn wart:
of mother ever born was:

dese zwei hâtin sich gekart
these two had themselves turned

zu Kehenîse beide
toward Kehenis both

und lachetin âne leide.
and laughed without sorrow.

dô sie Kehenis gesach,
when her Kehenis saw,

in im selbin her ez sprach,
in him self he it spoke,

daz nicht schôners mochte gelebin.
that nothing fairer might live.

dô sie wârin achtir wegin,
when they were behind away,

dô quam daz heiligtûm gegân.
then came the relics going.

dar nâch quam geriten sam
there after came ridden likewise

Brangêne die gûte,
Brangene the good,

die senftgemûte,
the gentle-minded,

die hobische und die wîse.
the courtly and the wise.

do gedûchte Kehenîse
then seemed to-Kehenis

an allem ir gebêre
in all her bearing

daz sie vele schôner wêre
that she much fairer were

den Gymêle die dâ vor reit.
than Gymele who there before rode.

iz wêre im lîp adir leit,
it were to-him dear or loath,

he muste ir doch den prîs lân,
he must to-her yet the prize leave,

wen sie was vil baz getân.
for she was much better made.

aleine dô Brangêne reit.
alone then Brangene rode.

dô die selbe vrauwe gemeit
when the same lady glad

vor die zwêne gesellin quam,
before the two companions came,

dô quâmen nâch ir gegân
then came after her going

zwêne tûre zeltâre:
two precious palfreys:

die trûgin eine bâre,
they carried a litter,

die was mit golde wol beslagin.
which was with gold well mounted.

dô bat im Kehenis sagin
then asked to-him Kehenis tell

sînen gesellin, waz ez wêre;
his companion, what it were;

dô sagete he im ze mêre:
then told he him as tidings:

,daz is‘ sprach he ,der hund mîn,
,that is‘ spoke he ,the dog my,

den vûret die koningîn
it carries the queen

alsus dorch mînen willin.‘
thus for my will.‘

zu sîme gesellin
to his companion

sprach Kehenis dô
spoke Kehenis then

„dû wurde selbe nî sô
„thou wert thyself never so

von mîner swestir gevûrt.“
by my sister carried.“

eir he ûz sprach daz wort,
before he out spoke the word,

do irsach her ein gelûchte
then saw he a gleam

daz im selbin des gedûchte,
that to-him self of-it seemed,

wie der sunnen wêrin zwû.
as-if of-the suns were two.

Tristrande vrâgete he balde dô,
Tristrant asked he quickly then,

waz daz mochte nû gesîn.
what that might now be.

,sich, dort her kumt die koningîn!‘
,see, there hither comes the queen!“

sprach der hêre Tristrant.
spoke the lord Tristrant.

Kehenis der wîgant
Kehenis the warrior

wolde es nicht getrûwin
would it not trust

daz von der schônen vrauwin
that by the fair lady

sô irlûchtet was der tag
so lit was the day

biz her sie selbe gesach.
until he her himself saw.

Di koningîn reit dô aleine.
The queen rode then alone.

Antrêd was ir gemeine.
Antret was her companion.

den hâte sie von ir gesant
him had she from her sent

um ein ding des he nicht en vant.
for a thing which he not — found.

ich enrûche ouch wes he tete.
I care-not also what he did.

dô quam die vrauwe zû der stete
then came the lady to the place

zû dem dorne geretin.
to the thorn-bush ridden.

daz lîcht brâchte sie dâ mete
the light brought she there with

daz Kehenis hâte gesên.
which Kehenis had seen.

dô muste he von schuldin jên
then must he by right avow

daz he schôner vrauwen nî gesach.
that he fairer lady never saw.

in sîme herzin her dô sprach
in his heart he then spoke

‚ez enwart nî schôner wîp:
‚there became never fairer woman:

jâ, leidir mîner swestir lîp
yes, alas my sister's body

enmag ir nicht gelîchen.‘
may her not equal.‘

dorch die koningîn rîche
for the queen rich

on sîner swestir sêre vordrôz.
him of-his sister sorely vexed.

Tristrant dô daz rîs schôz
Tristrant then the twig shot

der vrauwen pferde in den manen.
the lady's horse into the mane.

do begunde sie stille haben.
then began she still to-halt.

Brangênen sie dô balde hîz
Brangene she then quickly bade

daz sie Galîage rîf.
that she Galiag called.

dô der junchêre quam,
when the young-lord came,

dô sante sie on enweg dan
then sent she him away thence

und entbôt [gar schîre] dem koninge,
and sent-word [wholly soon] to-the king,

sie vûre harte obele,
she fared very ill,

daz wêre ir geschîn undir wegin:
that were to-her happened under way:

ab he ir wolde plegin,
if he of-her would take-care,

daz her sie die nacht vormede.
that he her the night should-avoid.

dar zû lîz sie in ouch betin,
there to let she him also ask,

sie muste habin grôzin rûm,
she must have great room,

daz her lîze sîne paulûn
that he let his pavilion

enhalf des wazzirs ûf slân
on-that-side of-the water up strike

und orez eine solde stân
and hers alone should stand

andirhalb des baches,
on-the-other-side of-the brook,

und daz he or gemaches
and that he for-her of-ease

schûfe swaz er mochte
provided whatever he might

und daz er des gerûchte
and that he it cared

mit allem vlîze nemen ware,
with all diligence to-take heed,

swen sie geretin quême dare,
whenever she ridden came thither,

daz kein hunt dâr enbulle
that no dog there barked

noch kein horn irschulle.
nor any horn sounded.

der junchêre wol gemeit
the young-lord well glad

Galîag dô von dannen reit
Galiag then from thence rode

und sagete dem koninge mêre.
and told the king tidings.

daz was im harte swêre
that was to-him very grievous

um der vrauwin unmacht.
for the lady's swoon.

îdoch was he des bedâcht,
yet was he of-it minded,

daz he des nicht enlîz
that he it not left-undone

swaz en die vrauwe betin hîz.
whatever him the lady to-ask bade.

die koningîn dô nedir trat:
the queen then down stepped:

daz sie hulfe nicht enbat,
that she help not asked,

daz was ir seldin eir geschên.
that was to-her seldom before happened.

do begunde die vrauwe gên
then began the lady to-go

zû dem hûse guldîn.
to the house golden.

sie nam dar ûz daz hundelîn.
she took there out the little-dog.

ich sage ûch wêrlîche
I tell you truly

daz sie gar lîplîche
that she wholly lovingly

begunde strêchen den hunt
began to-stroke the dog

mit irem mantele in der stunt.
with her mantle in the hour.

dâ lag manch jâchant inne.
there lay many-a jacinth in.

mit golde und mit gimme
with gold and with gems

was her wol gezîret
was it well adorned

unde wol gewîret,
and well wired,

mit koste genât:
with cost sewn:

der phellel was ein driplât,
the silk was a triplet,

die vedere was sich hermîn.
the lining was itself ermine.

dâ mete wart daz hundelîn
there with was the little-dog

gestreichet vil zertlîchen
stroked very tenderly

von der koninginne rîche.
by the queen rich.

Den hunt sie an den arm nam,
The dog she on the arm took,

zu trûtene, sie in began
to cherish, she it began

daz Kehenis der snelle
that Kehenis the swift

sprach ‚lîber mîn geselle,
spoke ‚dear my companion,

du salt dîner trûwe lôs sîn:
thou shalt of-thy faith free be:

du en worde von der swester mîn
thou — becamest by the sister my

nî sô wol gehaldin.‘
never so well held.‘

die koninginne Îsalde
the queen Isalde

den hunt wedir în getrûg.
the dog back in carried.

dô sie in sus strêchete genûg,
when she it thus stroked enough,

dô quam sie wedir gegangen;
then came she back going;

den mantel lîz sie nedir hangen.
the mantle let she down hang.

dô diz Kehenis gesach,
when this Kehenis saw,

ich wêne he zû Tristrande sprach,
I believe he to Tristrant spoke,

he sêge nî sô schône ein wîp.
he saw never so fair a woman.

dô sprach die vrauwe âne nît
then spoke the lady without grudge

zu den vogelin die dâ sungin
to the birds which there sang

‚ir hât michel wunne
‚you have great bliss

mit manchir hande stimmen.
with many kinds-of voices.

ich gebe ûch dorch minne
I give you for love

zwelf guldîn boige gût
twelve golden rings good

daz ir mir zu lîbe tût
that you for-me to love do

und vlîget mit mir hinnen
and fly with me hence

(des wil ich an ûch sinnen)
(of-it will I of you ask)

zu Blankenwalde dâr ich sî
to Blankenwald where I be

und sît mir noch hînacht bî
and be to-me still tonight by

und singet mir dâ dese nacht!‘
and sing to-me there this night!‘

dese list wart dar umme gedâcht,
this cunning was there for devised,

daz Tristrant wol vornême,
that Tristrant well should-perceive,

wâ he zû ir quême;
where he to her came;

wen sie entorstes im nicht sagin:
for she dared-it to-him not say:

daz was ir allir meiste clage.
that was her of-all greatest lament.

dô dese rede zu ende quam,
when this speech to end came,

Tristrant harte wol vornam,
Tristrant very well perceived,

wâ her zû ir komen solde
where he to her come should

als die vrauwe wolde.
as the lady would.

Kehenis and Gymele

VIII

Antret carries the queen to the town's outskirts, and Mark rides there at night, but Brangene keeps him out, saying the queen is too ill to be seen. Tristrant and Kehenis come to the queen, and Kehenis courts Gymele, who scorns him; the queen offers him Brangene or Gymele, he chooses Gymele, and she is bidden to lie with him. Isalde gives Gymele a pillow that brings sleep, and Kehenis sleeps the night through beside her and is mocked at dawn. After they ride off, their squires are chased by Pleherin, who takes them for Tristrant and calls on him in the queen's name to turn; the queen rebukes Pleherin, but grieves that Tristrant would not turn for her, and sends him word by Perenis. Tristrant protests his innocence, and Kurneval and Kehenis's man come in with three horses of four.

Dô dese rede was getân,
When this speech was done,

dô nam die koninginne sân
then took the queen straightway

iren mantel umme sich wedir.
her mantle about herself back.

dô quam ouch zu hant sedir
then came also at once afterward

Antrêd der leide man gerant 6635
Antret the loathsome man running

und hûb sie ûf sîn pferd zu hant
and lifted her onto his horse at once

und vûrte sie an die vûrstad.
and led her to the suburb.

swes die vrauwe den koning bat,
whatever the lady the king asked,

daz was allez vor getân.
that was all before done.

eir he selbe wolde slâfen gân
before he himself would to-sleep go

dô sich gelegite die diet,
when themselves laid the people,

dô en lîz he des nît,
then — left he it not,

dô reit der koning aleine dare
then rode the king alone thither

und wolde gerne nemen ware,
and would gladly take heed,

wie sie sich gehabete.
how she herself fared.

Brangêne im dô sagete,
Brangene to-him then said,

ir wêre alsô rechte wê,
to-her were so truly woe,

he enmochte sie nicht gesê
he might her not see

biz des morgenes vrô.
until in-the morning early.

waz mochte dô der koning tûn
what might then the king do

wen daz he enweg reit?
but that he away rode?

im was herzelîchen leit
to-him was heartily sorrowful

der schônen vrauwin ungemach.
of-the fair lady hardship.

dô ez quam in die nacht,
when it came into the night,

Tristrant der helt quam;
Tristrant the hero came;

man lîz in vor die vrauwen stân
one let him before the lady stand

und Kehenîsen dar mete.
and Kehenis there with.

sie entvîng sie nâch irem sete
she received them after her custom

harte minniglîche.
very lovingly.

die schône vrauwe rîche
the fair lady rich

Tristranden dô zû ir nam,
Tristrant then to herself took,

Kehenîsen hîz sie gân
Kehenis bade she go

hen zu Gymêlen
hence to Gymele

von der Schitrîêlen.
of the Schitriele.

Do enwas dar nîman inne
Then was there no-one within

mit der [werdin] koninginne
with the [worthy] queen

wen die iren rât wisten
except those-who her counsel knew

und mit grôzer liste
and with great cunning

in hâlen in ir mûte,
it concealed in their mind,

wen Brangêne die vil gûte
except Brangene the very good

und Gymêle und Perenîs.
and Gymele and Perenis.

do begunde der hêre Kehenîs
then began the lord Kehenis

zu Gymêlen minne sûchen,
from Gymele love to-seek,

do enwolde sie es nicht rûchen.
then would she it not care.

6675 îdoch en lîz her des nît,
yet — left he it not,

ez wêre ir leit adir lîp,
it were to-her sorrowful or dear,

vaste he ir ane lach.
hard he to-her on lay.

die vrauwe dô zû im sprach
the lady then to him spoke

‚wâ tût ir hen ûwirn sin?
‚where put you hence your sense?

6680 jâ sêt ir wol daz ich nicht bin
yes see you well that I not am

eine gebûrinne
a peasant-woman

daz ir mich bittet umme minne
that you me ask for love

in sô gar korzir zît:
in so wholly short time:

ich wêne ir ein gebûr sît.
I believe you a peasant are.

6685 wie mochte ez anders geschîn?
how might it otherwise happen?

ich râte ûch ûf die trûwe mîn
I counsel you upon the faith my

daz ir es nimmir werdet lût:
that you of-it never become loud:

ja enwil ich nimmer kein trût.
yes will I never any beloved.

daz sage ich ûch vor wâr:
that tell I you for true:

hêtet ir ouch vunf jâr
(if)-had you also five years

zu allem mîme bote stân,
at all my command stood,

dennoch wêrez ungetân
yet it-would-be undone

des ir gewûgit wedir mich.‘
of-what you mentioned toward me.‘

do bedâchte die vrauwe sich
then bethought the lady herself

und sprach dô her wedere
and spoke then hither back

‚ir dunket mich sô bedirwe,
‚you seem to-me so worthy,

wêret ir mîn lantman
(if)-were you my countryman

und mir wol genôzsam
and to-me well equal

und gevîlez mînen vrûnden
and (if)-pleased-it my friends

daz sie ûch mîn wol gunden
that they you of-me well granted

und uns daz gezême,
and to-us that befitted,

ich wêne ich ûch wol nême.‘
I believe I you well would-take.‘

Kehenis dô sîner vrîen
Kehenis then of-his wooing

dorch nôt sich muste vorzîen.
for need himself must renounce.

im was leit daz her es î began.
to-him was sorrowful that he it ever began.

do enwuste nicht der wîse man,
then knew not the wise man,

waz he sprechin solde.
what he speak should.

die koningîn dô wolde
the queen then would

mit Tristrande ir gemach hân:
with Tristrant her ease have:

zu Kehenîse sprach sie sân
to Kehenis spoke she straightway

‚ich wil ûch zu nacht lîen
‚I will you at night lend

eine behegelîche amîen
a pleasing sweetheart

dorch Tristrandes willen.
for Tristrant's will.

Brangênen nemet stille
Brangene take quietly

adir Gymêlen
or Gymele

von der Schitriêle;
of the Schitriele;

sweder ûch lîber sî,
whichever to-you dearer be,

die heizzet ûch hînt legin bî.‘
her bid you tonight lie by.‘

he wolde nicht sêre îlen,
he would not sorely hasten,

he gedâchte lange wîle
he thought long while

daz sie in zu spote hête
that she him in mockery had

biz sie sprach daz sie ez stête
until she spoke that she it steadily

in trûwin alsô meinte
in faith so meant

und sie im daz bezêgte
and she to-him that showed

daz he ez vor wâre wiste.
that he it for true knew.

dô sprach he mit listen
then spoke he with cunning

‚unsir hêre von dem trône
‚our lord from the throne

der mûze ûch ummir lônen!
he may you ever reward!

wêre nû die kore mîn,
(if)-were now the choice mine,

sô muste ez Gymêle sîn;
so must it Gymele be;

wen ich hâ gesprochin wedir sie
for I have spoken with her

und habe bî ir gesezzin hie
and have by her sat here

und bat sie um ir minne.‘
and asked her for her love.‘

dô hîz die koninginne
then bade the queen

Gymêlen zû im legen gân:
Gymele to him to-lie go:

dô mochte he gûte vroude hân.
then might he good joy have.

Gymêle nicht enlîz,
Gymele not left-off,

Kehenîsen sie dô hîz
Kehenis she then bade

mit ir zusamene betten.
with her together to-bed.

do entschûte man dem recken.
then unshod one the warrior.

dô her an deme bette lach,
when he on the bed lay,

Gymêle zu irer vrawen sprach
Gymele to her lady spoke

‚wêre uch lîp, vrauwe hêre,
‚were to-you dear, lady lordly,

daz ich vorlore mîne êre?‘
that I lost my honor?‘

„nein mir“ sprach die koningîn:
„no to-me“ spoke the queen:

„dû salt nemen daz kussen mîn
„thou shalt take the cushion my

daz ich undir mîn houbet lege
which I under my head lay

swen ich mich nâch Tristranden sene
whenever I myself after Tristrant long

daz mich der slâf undergât.
that me the sleep overcomes.

dû weist wol, wie ez dar umme stât.
thou knowest well, how it there about stands.

daz lege im underz houbet,
that lay to-him under-the head,

sô wert he sô betoubit
so becomes he so stunned

daz he slêfet al die nacht.
that he sleeps all the night.

âne sorge dû denne macht
without care thou then mayst

mit gûtem vrede bî im legin,
with good peace by him lie,

wen ez wêre bôse vormedin.“
for it were ill avoided.“

Daz kussen daz was sô getân:
The cushion it was so made:

sweme ez underz houbet quam,
to-whomever it under-the head came,

der slîf nacht unde tag
he slept night and day

daz he nichtis mê geplag,
that he of-nothing more took-care,

im worde den daz kussen enzogin.
from-him were unless the cushion withdrawn.

alsus wart Kehenis betrogin:
thus was Kehenis deceived:

daz kussen nam sie lîse
the cushion took she softly

und sprach zu Kehenîse
and spoke to Kehenis

‚ir sult daz houbet ûf hebin,
‚you shall the head up lift,

ich wil ûch an mînen arm legin:
I will you on my arm lay:

daz hât mir mîn vrauwe entboten.‘
that has to-me my lady sent-word.‘

Kehenis dankte gote
Kehenis thanked God

und wart inniglîchen vrô;
and became inwardly glad;

Gymêle im daz kussen dô
Gymele to-him the cushion then

mit listen underz houbet stîz.
with cunning under-the head pushed.

zu hant her sîn wachin lîz
at once he his waking let

daz her der minne nicht entreib:
that he the love not practiced:

daz was im gar sêre leid.
that was to-him wholly sorely sorrowful.

Des morgens dô ez tagete
In-the morning when it dawned

und sich gekleidet habete
and herself clothed had

Gymêle und ûf was gestân,
Gymele and up was stood,

daz kussen zoug sie dô dan
the cushion drew she then thence

deme helde von den ôren.
from-the hero from the ears.

do entwachete der tôre
then awoke the fool

und greif umme mit der hant.
and reached about with the hand.

dô he der vrauwen nicht envant,
when he the lady not found,

dô wart im vil hône.
then became to-him very shameful.

dô tagetiz itzunt schône,
then dawned-it now fair,

die nacht was vorgangen.
the night was passed.

Kehenis wêre gerne dannen
Kehenis would-have gladly thence

gewesin obir zênzig mîle.
been over hundred miles.

îdoch muste he eine wîle
yet must he a while

ân sînen dank dâ belîben
against his will there remain

bî der vrauwen und den wîben,
by the lady and the women,

biz daz he sîn leit hôrte.
until that he his sorrow heard.

mit spotlîchen wortin
with mocking words

sprach im Gymêle zû
spoke to-him Gymele to

‚wiste ich nechtin daz ir sô
‚(if)-knew I last-night that you so

togentlîchen kundet legin,
virtuously could lie,

ich hête ûch nicht vorzegin
I would-have you not refused

sô getâner dinge:
so made things:

daz ir mich bâtit umme minne,
that you me asked for love,

ich hête es ûch wol irloubit.‘
I would-have it to-you well allowed.‘

des was vor leide nâ irtoubit
of-it was for sorrow near deafened

Kehenis dâ ûf der stete.
Kehenis there upon the place.

swer sîne ôren ersnete,
whoever his ears cut,

kein blûttropfe wêre komen ûz.
no blood-drop would-have come out.

he wêre gerne ze hûs!
he were gladly at home!

Do begunde lûchten der tag
Then began to-shine the day

daz man dar von wol gesach:
that one there from well saw:

dô musten sie sich scheidin
then must they themselves part

aber in grôzem leide.
again in great sorrow.

do enwuste Tristrant nicht
then knew Tristrant not

daz der helt betrûbete sich,
that the hero grieved himself,

he hâte froude genûg.
he had joy enough.

dô quâmen sie zu einem brûch,
then came they to a marsh,

dar sie obir rîten soldin.
where they over ride should.

Tristrant dô wolde
Tristrant then would

einen rechtin pfad gân
a right path go

und hîz Perenîsen sân
and bade Perenis straightway

daz he den knapen sagete
that he to-the squires said

und wîste in wâ he habete
and showed them where he had

Kurnevâlen heizzen belîben.
Kurneval bidden remain.

Perenîs enwolde des nicht mîden,
Perenis would it not avoid,

her lîf und sagetez Kurnevâle.
he ran and told-it to-Kurneval.

der batschaft nam in hâle
of-the message took in secrecy

als her zu rechte tete.
as he by right did.

die knapin hûbin sich zu stete
the squires raised themselves at once

und woldin bî dem brûche
and would by the marsh

ire hêren gerne sûchen,
their lords gladly seek,

ab sie si mochtin vinden.
if they them might find.

von des koninges ingesinde
from the king's household

ein hêre dô zû in quam
a lord then to them came

und andere siben sîne man,
and other seven his men,

der was Pleherîn genant.
he was Pleherin named.

der begunde sie zu hant
he began them at once

harte sêre zu jagen.
very sorely to hunt.

dô sie nicht mochten haben,
when they not might halt,

sie vlogin âne schande.
they fled without shame.

Pleherîn dô wânde
Pleherin then thought

daz ez Tristrant wêre
that it Tristrant were

und rîf ‚kêrâ, helt, kêre
and called ‚turn-oh, hero, turn

dorch die grôze kûnheit dîn!'
for the great boldness thy!'

des en mochte nicht gesîn.
it — might not be.

dô bat her in umme kêrin
then asked he him about to-turn

dorch der koninginne êre,
for the queen's honor,

ab sie im wêre lîp.
if she to-him were dear.

dennoch en tâtin sie des nît.
yet — did they it not.

Die jageten in sô sêre nâch,
They hunted them so sorely after,

swie jenen wêre gâch,
however to-those were haste,

daz sie kûme von in quâmen.
that they barely from them came.

ein pfert sie on nâmen
a horse they from-them took

und jagetin sie sô verre,
and hunted them so far,

daz Kurnevâl reit erre
that Kurneval rode astray

des tagis lange wîle,
of-the day long while,

mêr denne vîr grôze mîle,
more than four great miles,

eir he sînen hêren vunde.
before he his lord found.

dar nâch in korzir stunde
there after in short hour

quam zu hofe Pleherîn
came to court Pleherin

und sprach zû der koningîn
and spoke to the queen

‚vrauwe, ich sach Tristrande:
‚lady, I saw Tristrant:

er ist hie in desim lande.
he is here in this land.

ich half in hûte jagin,
I helped him today hunt,

wir wunnen im ein pfert abe:
we won from-him a horse off:

dennoch her vaste hin vlô.
yet he fast hence fled.

zu lest manete ich in dô
at last urged I him then

daz he dorch ûch wolde kêren.
that he for you would turn.

der hêre hâte sulch gebêre,
the lord had such bearing,

als ab he nicht enhôrte.‘
as if he not heard.‘

die vrauwe im dô antworte
the lady to-him then answered

harte zorniglîche
very angrily

und sprach ernstlîche
and spoke earnestly

‚war umme saltû mir daz sagin?
‚what for shalt-thou to-me that say?

ich wolde dû hêtest in getragin
I would thou hadst him carried

ûf dîme rucken in den sê
upon thy back into the sea

daz ich nimmir nichtes mê
that I never anything more

hôrte gewehen sîn.
heard mention of-him.

doch getorstest dû die ougen dîn
yet daredst thou the eyes thy

eir ûz dînem kopfe graben,
sooner out-of thy head dig,

eir wen dû in torstest jagen.
sooner than thou him daredst hunt.

Pleherîn was ein hobisch man:
Pleherin was a courtly man:

dô he den grôzin zorn vornam
when he the great anger perceived

den sîne vrauwe habete,
which his lady had,

in sînem herzen he dô clagete
in his heart he then lamented

daz he der rede î began.
that he the speech ever began.

zu hant her es abe quam.
at once he of-it off came.

dar ane er wîslîchen tete.
there on he wisely did.

von dannen hûb er sich zu stete;
from thence raised he himself at once;

dô môgete die vrauwe [gar] sêre
then grieved the lady [wholly] sorely

daz he nicht wolde wedir kêrin
that he not would back turn

dorch iren willen.
for her will.

bî Perenîse vil stille
by Perenis very quietly

entbôt sie dem helde sân,
sent-word she to-the hero straightway,

her hête gar obele getân
he had wholly ill done

daz he nicht umme kârte
that he not about turned

dô Pleherîn rîf sô harte,
when Pleherin called so hard,

‚und in dorch mich kêrin bat.'
‚and him for me to-turn asked.'

Perenîs was vil gerat:
Perenis was very quick:

balde he Tristrande irlîf
quickly he Tristrant overtook

und sagete im âne brîf
and told him without letter

der koninginne boteschaft.
the queen's message.

zu hant he dâ wider sprach
at once he there against spoke

‚ich wêne, ich unschuldig sî,
‚I believe, I innocent be,

ouch machstû daz merkin dâ bî:
also mayst-thou that mark there by:

uns sîn die pferd noch nicht komen:
to-us are the horses still not come:

ich hêtes schadin adir vromen,
I would-have-of-it harm or gain,

swer mich des dorch sie bête,
whoever me of-it for her asked,

und ab her tûsent ritter hête,
and if he thousand knights had,

ich kêrte im undir die ougen:
I would-turn to-him under the eyes:

daz sal sie mir gelouben,
that shall she to-me believe,

wen ez ist sicherlîchen wâr.‘
for it is surely true.‘

dô quam Kurnevâl aldar
then came Kurneval thither

und Kehenis knecht dâ mete
and Kehenis's knight there with

mit dren pferdin geretin.
with three horses ridden.

daz vîrde hâtin sie vorlorn,
the fourth had they lost,

ez wêre in lîp adir zorn.
it were to-them dear or anger.

Tristrant as a Leper

IX

Tristrant nearly strikes Kehenis for mocking him, then sends Perenis back to tell the queen that he is innocent of what she has heard. She will not believe it, and he resolves to win her acquittal. Dressed as a leper, he comes before her; she knows him at once, yet has him driven off and laughs as servants beat him. Kurneval, enraged, makes him swear to shun her for a year. Tristrant makes his peace with Kehenis, now takes his wife in earnest out of anger, and her father drops his feud. By Michaelmas the queen repents, after Perenis tells her that Tristrant was innocent, and plans to send him word, but by a messenger rather than a letter.

Kehenis dô wânde
Kehenis then thought

daz deme edelin Tristrande
that to-the noble Tristrant

sîne houbetschande wêre lîf,
his head-shame were dear,

daz he nechtin sô sêre slîf
that he last-night so sorely slept

und daz he ez hête gerâtin.
and that he it had counseled.

sînen zorn he alsô drâte
his anger he so quickly

an im rechin wolde:
on him avenge would:

he tet anders wen he solde. 6920
he did otherwise than he should.

dô her die ros komen sach,
when he the horses come saw,

zû den knapen he dô sprach
to the squires he then spoke

‚ir wârit an einer gûten stat,
‚you were in a good place,

die ros habin gegezzin sat,
the horses have eaten full,

sint wir wordin hûte gejagit.‘ 6925
since we became today hunted.‘

„war umme hâstû daz gesagit?“
„what for hast-thou that said?“

sprach Tristrant der gûte
spoke Tristrant the good

in [vil] zorniglîchem mûte.
in [very] angry mind.

‚dar umme, wen ez wâr is:
‚there for, for it true is:

wêren dir die ougen ûz als wis, 6930
(if)-were to-thee the eyes out as wise,

sô rette ich als ich nû hân.‘
so would-speak I as I now have.‘

„lâz dînen [bôsen] spot zugân!“
„let thy [wicked] mockery go-down!“

‚zwâre ez enist mir kein spot.‘
‚truly it is to-me no mockery.‘

„en ist ez, sô helfe mir got!“
„(if)-not is it, so help me God!“

‚nein ez wêrlîche.‘
‚no it truly.‘

„sô sprichestû bôslîche
„so speakest-thou wickedly

und als ein ungetrûwer man.“
and as a faithless man.“

her lîf in mit der fûst an
he ran him with the fist at

und wolde in slân nedir.
and would him strike down.

dô gedâchte he her wedir
then thought he hither back

„her ist mit dir ûz komen:
„he is with thee out come:

ez enwêre dir kein vrome;
it were to-thee no gain;

swie obele sô he habe getân,
however ill so he have done,

lâz dû dînen zorn zugân“
let thou thy anger pass-away“

gedâchte der helt wîse
thought the hero wise

und sprach zu Perenîse
and spoke to Perenis

„nû sage dû der koningîn
„now tell thou the queen

daz ich des unschuldig bin
that I of-it innocent am

daz ir von mir gesaget is.
which to-her of me said is.

des sî sie sicher und gewis,
of-it be she sure and certain,

daz ich des nî nicht gelîz
that I of-it never anything left-undone

swes man mich bat adir hîz
whatever one me asked or bade

dorch mîner vrauwin willen tûn.
for my lady's will to-do.

ez wêre ouch nû ze vrû,
it were also now too early,

ab ich des nû nicht entête,
if I it now not did,

swes man mich dorch sie bête.
whatever one me for her asked.

wiltû mir der wârheit jên
(if)-wilt-thou to-me the truth avow

(ouch hâst dû daz selbe wol gesên,
(also hast thou the same well seen,

daz sie mich unrechte hât gezegin),
that she me wrongly has accused),

nû louf balde achtir wegin
now run quickly off away

und sage daz der vrauwin mîn.
and tell that to-the lady my.

ich wil alhîr bêtin dîn
I will all-here wait-for thee

und dû mich aber besprichest
and thou me again speak-to

und mich des berichtest,
and me of-it inform,

ob sie mich welle schuldig hân,
whether she me will guilty have,

oder der schulde ledig lân."
or of-the guilt free let."

Dô Perenîs ze der vrauwen quam
When Perenis to the lady came

und die koningîn vornam
and the queen heard

Tristrandes bateschaft,
Tristrant's message,

zû dem knapen sie dô sprach
to the squire she then spoke

‚ôwê waz wilt dû?
‚alas what wilt thou?

dû bist gemîtet dar zû,
thou art hired there to,

daz dû mich solt betrîgen.
that thou me shalt deceive.

lêst dû logene vlîgen,
(if)-lettest thou lies fly,

daz mag dir noch werdin leit.‘
that may to-thee still become sorrowful.‘

dô swûr he or noch manchin eit
then swore he to-her yet many-a oath

daz he ir nicht enloge
that he to-her not lied

und sie ungerne betroge.
and her ungladly deceived.

do enwolde die vrauwe
then would the lady

im des nicht getrûwen,
him of-it not trust,

daz he wâr habete.
that he true had.

Perenîs dô sagete
Perenis then said

daz ez die knapen wêrin
that it the squires were

die dâ nicht woldin kêrin.
who there not would turn.

,die quâmen itzunt geretin
,they came now ridden

und Tristrant hâte ir irbetin
and Tristrant had them awaited

al dâr dorch den langen tag.‘
all there through the long day.‘

die vrauwe dô dar wedir sprach.
the lady then there against spoke.

,Perenîs, daz dû dorch habe
,Perenis, that thou for gain

mir unrecht wilt sagen,
to-me wrong wilt say,

daz enist mir nicht lîp.‘
that is to-me not dear.‘

do entorste he mêr gereden nît,
then dared he more speak not,

dô he den zorn von ir vornam.
when he the anger from her perceived.

zu Tristrande he dô wedir quam
to Tristrant he then back came

und sagete im, wie die vrauwe
and told him, how the lady

nicht wolde trûwen,
not would trust,

daz er unschuldig wêre.
that he innocent were.

die rede dûchte in swêre
the speech seemed to-him grievous

und sprach ,daz ist mir leit:
and spoke ,that is to-me sorrowful:

nû mûz ich grôze erbeit
now must I great toil

abir dar umme nû bestân
again there for now undergo

adir sie mûz mich ledig lân,
or she must me free let,

ez sî ir leit adir lîf.‘
it be to-her sorrowful or dear.‘

Kurnevâlen her dô rîf
Kurneval he then called

daz he zoge von dem wege
that he should-draw from the way

und Kehenîsen den degin
and Kehenis the warrior

lîze rîten swar he wolde,
should-let ride wherever he would,

‚wen ich habe die holde
‚for I have the favor

mîner vrauwen dorch in vorlorn.‘
of-my lady through him lost.‘

dô Kehenis Tristrandes zorn
when Kehenis Tristrant's anger

alsô grôzen vornam,
so great perceived,

grôze rûwe he gewan
great remorse he got

daz he wedir sînen willen
that he against his will

obir lût und stille
over loud and still

icht gesprochen habete:
aught spoken had:

Kurnevâlin her dô sagete
to-Kurneval he then said

‚ich enwil nergin rîten:
‚I will nowhere ride:

ich wil mit dir hie bîten
I will with thee here wait

biz mîn geselle wedir kome.‘
until my companion back come.‘

wâ hât ir î vornomen
where have you ever heard

um einer vrauwen hulde
for a lady's favor

dorch alsô cleine schulde
for so little guilt

sô vlîzlîchen werben?
so diligently strive?

he sprach, he wolde eir sterbin
he spoke, he would rather die

‚adir sie saget mich unschuldich.‘
‚or she declares me innocent.‘

dannen hûb dô Tristrant sich
thence raised then Tristrant himself

zu eime miselsîchin man;
to a leprous man;

sîne cleider her an sich nam
his clothes he on himself took

und sîne kleppirn an die hant.
and his clappers on the hand.

dô gîng der hêre Tristrant
then went the lord Tristrant

vor die koninginne
before the queen

in jêmirlîchem dinge
in lamentable plight

als he wêre ein sîcher man.
as he were a sick man.

do erkante in die frawe sân
then recognized him the lady straightway

und hîz in dannen trîben.
and bade him thence drive.

dô wolde he nicht vormîden,
then would he not avoid,

he quême abir dâr sie in sach.
he should-come again where she him saw.

die vrauwe dô zorniglîchen sprach
the lady then angrily spoke

‚trîbet hinweg den sîchen!'
‚drive away the sick-one!'

zwêne knapin dô lîfen
two squires then ran

und slûgen im grôze slege.
and struck him great blows.

dar zû stîzen sie den degin
there to pushed they the warrior

gar ungefûglîche.
wholly roughly.

daz sach die vrauwe rîche
that saw the lady rich

und irlachete des sêre.
and laughed at-it sorely.

do begunde dannen kêren
then began thence to-turn

Tristrant der degin gûte
Tristrant the warrior good

in zornigem mûte.
in angry mind.

Dô Tristrant hin wedir quam
When Tristrant hence back came

unde Kurnevâl vornam
and Kurneval perceived

swaz die vrauwe hâte getân,
whatever the lady had done,

daz sie den hêren sach slân
that she the lord saw struck

und sie des sô sêre lachete,
and she at-it so sorely laughed,

zu hant her sie dô hazzete
at once he her then hated

freislîchen sêre.
terribly sorely.

he hête ir al ir êre
he would-have from-her all her honor

dar umme gerne benomen.
there for gladly taken.

do enmochte he ir nicht nâher komen,
then might he to-her not nearer come,

wen he sprach zu sîme hêren
but he spoke to his lord

‚ich wil nimmermêre
‚I will nevermore

keinen tag mit ûch geblîben,
any day with you remain,

ir wollet denne die vrauwe mîden
you unless-will then the lady shun

ein jâr dorch mînen willen
a year for my will

daz sie ûch obir lût noch stille
that she you over loud nor still

gespreche noch an gesê,
speak-with nor at look,

ir sî wol adir wê,
to-her be well or woe,

eir daz jâr sî vorgân.‘
before the year be passed.‘

daz gelobete her im sân
that promised he to-him straightway

getrûwelîche an sîne hant.
faithfully into his hand.

dô vorkôs ouch [her] Tristrant
then renounced also [he] Tristrant

ûf sînen gesellin Kehenîsen
toward his companion Kehenis

und gewan dar nâch zu wîbe
and took there after as wife

sîne swestir dorch den zorn.
his sister through the anger.

dô wart ouch die vêhede vorkorn
then was also the feud renounced

die ir vatir zû im getrûg.
which her father toward him bore.

dô hâten vroude genûg
then had joy enough

Tristrant und daz wîp sîn
Tristrant and the wife his

und enrûchete nicht der koningîn,
and cared not of-the queen,

swie sie rûwe hête:
however she grief had:

sîne vroude die was stête.
his joy it was steadfast.

Diz was in dem meien geschên,
This was in the May happened,

daz Tristrant hâte gesên
that Tristrant had seen

sîne vrauwen die koninginnen
his lady the queen

und her mit unminne
and he with unlove

von ir was gescheidin.
from her was parted.

do gewerte dese grôze leide
then lasted this great sorrow

biz an sente Michaêlis tage.
until to Saint Michael's day.

do begunde die vrauwe sêre clagin
then began the lady sorely to-lament

daz sie Tristranden nicht ensach.
that she Tristrant not saw.

Perenîs ir zû sprach
Perenis to-her to spoke

‚vrauwe, her tûd ûch rechte,
‚lady, he does to-you right,

wen ir an deme gûten knechte
for you to the good knight

untogentlîchin hât getân
unvirtuously have done

daz ir in hîzet slân,
that you him bade strike,

wen he was unschuldich.‘
for he was innocent.‘

„dû spotest zwâre.“ ‚nein ich.‘
„thou mockest truly.“ ‚not I.‘

„sô lûgest dû?“ ‚nein, ich entû.‘
„so liest thou?“ ‚no, I do-not.‘

„meinest dû ez?“ ‚jâ, ich sô.‘
„meanest thou it?“ ‚yes, I so.‘

dô wart ir gar leit
then became to-her wholly sorrowful

daz her sie dar umme meit.
that he her there for shunned.

do gewan sie an irem herzin
then got she in her heart

michelîche smerze
great pain

daz sie dorch iren zorn
that she through her anger

mit rechte hâte vorlorn
with right had lost

Tristrandes hulde.
Tristrant's favor.

sie dâchte an ir schulde
she thought on her guilt

und weinete um ir missetâd.
and wept for her misdeed.

zû ir holden nam sie râd,
to her loyal-ones took she counsel,

waz sie dar umme tête.
what she there about should-do.

do beriet sie sich stête,
then decided she herself steadfastly,

daz sie im einen brîf sente
that she to-him a letter should-send

und im des bekente,
and to-him of-it confessed,

daz sie obele hête getân:
that she ill had done:

des wolde sie im zu bûze stân,
for-it would she to-him to atonement stand,

swie im selbin wêre lîf.
however to-him himself were dear.

‚ez ist bezzir âne brîf‘
‚it is better without letter‘

sprach die zarte koningîn,
spoke the tender queen,

‚wen worde der selbe bote mîn
‚for (if)-became the same messenger my

begriffen mit dem brîbe,
seized with the letter,

sô geschêge nî sô lîbe
so would-happen never so dear

den bôsen nîdêren.
to-the wicked enviers.

dar umme, ich wêne, bezzir wêre
there for, I believe, better were

daz ich âne brîf sende dar.
that I without letter send thither.

nû sult ir rechte nemen war,
now shall you rightly take heed,

wen ich dar senden moge
whom I thither send may

der mir zû der botschaft toge.‘
who to-me to the message might-avail.‘

Piloise's Errand

x

The queen sends the page Piloise to Tristrant with word of her hair shirt and her remorse for laughing when he was beaten. Piloise finds him hawking with a sparrowhawk near Karahes and pleads for her. Tristrant forgives her and asks her to put off the shirt, but keeps his vow to shun her for a year: in May he will come. To hide the errand he has Piloise beg of him as a stranger and gives him a hundred shillings; Piloise buys goods at the fair of Saint Michael's Stone and sails home. When Mark asks where he came by such wealth, the queen, fearing he will betray her, breaks into a sweat.

Nû was ein garzûn in dem hove,
Now was a page in the court,

der was vil wol gezogin:
he was very well bred:

he was stolz unde gevûge
he was proud and courteous

und hâte sinne genûge:
and had senses enough:

Pîloise der knape hîz.
Piloise the squire was-called.

die vrauwe den boten winnen lîz
the lady the messenger get let

und begunde im clagen daz ir war:
and began to-him to-lament what to-her was:

‚ich wil dich betin, ab ich tar.'
‚I will thee ask, if I dare.'

„albalde, vrauwe, sprechet nû!"
„all-quickly, lady, speak now!"

‚jâ, ich vorchte, ez sî zu hô.'
‚yes, I fear, it be too high.'

„zwâre, vrauwe, nein ez nît."
„truly, lady, no it not."

‚sô spriche ich.' „jâ, swaz ûch ist lîp."
‚so speak I.' „yes, whatever to-you is dear."

‚wiltû ez tûn?' „waz weiz ich,
‚wilt-thou it do?' „what know I,

ir lât ez denne hôrin mich,
you let it then hear me,

ob ich mag?" ‚jâ, dû wol.'
whether I may?" ‚yes, thou well.'

„sô tûn ich." ‚eia! wie ich daz sol
„so do I." ‚ah! how I that shall

verdienen!' „daz hât ir getân."
deserve!' „that have you done."

‚sô wil ich ez bestân
‚so will I it undertake

und wil dirz sagen.' „alsô tût!"
and will to-thee-it say.' „so do!"

‚nû merke recht mînen mût:
‚now mark rightly my mind:

mir ist gar obele geschên,
to-me is wholly ill happened,

daz saltû mir helfin jên,
that shalt-thou me help avow,

wen ich dorch mînen zorn
for I through my anger

von rechtir schulde hâ vorlorn
from right guilt have lost

Tristrandes vrûntschaft,
Tristrant's friendship,

wen ich sach im einen slach
for I saw to-him a blow

slân unde aber einen.
struck and again one.

dar umme solde ich weinen,
there for should I weep,

ab ich icht vorsunnen wâre,
if I at-all sensible were,

des lachete ich offinbâre:
at-it laughed I openly:

Von der selbin schulde
From the same guilt

habe ich sîne hulde
have I his favor

vorlorn nû vil manchin tag.‘
lost now very many-a day.‘

zu Pîloisen sie dô sprach
to Piloise she then spoke

‚dû salt zu im mîn bote sîn:
‚thou shalt to him my messenger be:

dar um wil ich dir lâzin schîn
there for will I to-thee let shine

vil harte schône mîte.
very exceedingly fair gifts.

ob ich ez im tar entbîten,
if I it to-him dare send-word,

sô saltû im mîn dînest sagin
so shalt-thou to-him my service tell

unde mînen kummer clagin,
and my grief lament,

den ich nâch im lîde.
which I after him suffer.

ich trage nêhest mîme lîbe
I wear next-to my body

ein hemede daz ist hêrîn:
a shirt which is of-hair:

daz tûn ich dorch den willen sîn.
that do I for the will his.

daz weiz he selbe wol, mîn trût,
that knows he himself well, my beloved,

daz mîn cleine edele hût
that my small noble skin

gar obele daz erlîden mag,
wholly ill that endure may,

daz ich nacht unde tag
that I night and day

daz hêrîn hemede wolle tragen:
the hair shirt will wear:

des saltû mînem lîbe sagen
that shalt-thou to-my love say

daz he sich wedir zû mir kêre,
that he himself back to me turn,

oder ich trage ez immer mêre
or I wear it ever more

daz ich daz nimmer ûz getû.
that I it never out do.

ouch saltu im sagin dar zû,
also shalt-thou to-him say there to,

ich enkunne nicht genesin,
I can not survive,

he wil mir denne gnêdig wesin:
he unless-will to-me then gracious be:

ich bin sicherlîchen tôd,
I am surely dead,

he en helfe mir schîre ûz der nôd.
he unless help me soon out-of the distress.

Pîloise‘ sprach die koningîn
Piloise‘ spoke the queen

‚irwirbestu mir die hulde sîn,
‚(if)-winnest-thou for-me the favor his,

dû salt des immer fromen hân.‘
thou shalt of-it ever gain have.‘

dô hûb sich der knape sân
then raised himself the squire straightway

ûz kurnevâlischem lande
out-of Cornish land

nâch dem edelin Tristrande.
after the noble Tristrant.

do he Karahes sô nâhe quam,
when he Karahes so near came,

daz he die borg sach vor im stân,
that he the castle saw before him stand,

dô reit Tristrant der degin
then rode Tristrant the warrior

ûf dem velde an den wegin
upon the field by the ways

mit eime sperwâre
with a sparrowhawk

beizzen offenbâre.
hawking openly.

einen vogil hâte he gevangin,
a bird had he caught,

dar ane was sîn wille irgangin:
there on was his will come-about:

des was der edele hêre vrô;
of-it was the noble lord glad;

ouch hâte der sperwêre dô
also had the sparrowhawk then

sînen vollin kropf gezzin:
its full crop eaten:

des was her ouch vormezzin
of-it was it also presumptuous

und stunt im vrôlîch ûf der hant.
and stood to-him gladly upon the hand.

dô sach der hêre Tristrant
then saw the lord Tristrant

Pîloisen an dem wege gân
Piloise on the way go

und dâchte an sîme mûte sân
and thought in his mind straightway

daz he ein bote wêre
that he a messenger were

und brâchte lîchte vroudemêre:
and brought perhaps joyful-tidings:

dar umme hûb he sich dar.
there for raised he himself thither.

dô wart der knape sîn gewar
then became the squire of-him aware

und gîng im engegene.
and went him toward.

he wolde an dem degene
he would from the warrior

ervaren mit liste
find-out with cunning

des he vor nicht enwiste.
of-what he before not knew.

Dô sie zu samen quâmen
When they to together came

und ein ander vornâmen,
and each other perceived,

do irkanten sie sich zu hant.
then knew they each-other at once.

dô hîz der hêre Tristrant
then bade the lord Tristrant

Pîloisen willekome sîn
Piloise welcome be

und vrâgete in um die koningîn,
and asked him about the queen,

wie sie sich gehabete.
how she herself fared.

Pîloise im dô sagete
Piloise to-him then said

‚sie gehabet sich als ein arm wîp.‘
‚she fares herself as a poor woman.‘

„war umme?“ ‚dâ hât sie den lîp
„what for?“ ‚there has she the life

7225 von dînen schuldin nâch vorlorn.‘
through thy guilt nearly lost.‘

„dorch waz?“ ‚sie vorchtet dînen zorn.‘
„through what?“ ‚she fears thy anger.‘

„tût sie?“ ‚jâ in trûwen.‘
„does she?“ ‚yes in truth.‘

„sie endarf.“ ‚doch, sie ist in rûwen.‘
„she needs-not.“ ‚yet, she is in grief.‘

„war umme?“ ‚dû weist wol umme waz.‘
„what for?“ ‚thou knowest well about what.‘

7230 „nein ich.“ ‚dâ bistû ir gehaz.‘
„no I.“ ‚there art-thou to-her hostile.‘

„waz weistû?“ ‚ich weiz daz wol.‘
„what knowest-thou?“ ‚I know that well.‘

„wiltu mir daz sagin?“ ‚jâ ich sol.‘
„wilt-thou to-me that say?“ ‚yes I shall.‘

„sô sprich an!“ ‚sie sach dich slân.‘
„so speak on!“ ‚she saw thee struck.‘

„daz ist wâr.“ ‚nu zornestû sân?‘
„that is true.“ ‚now ragest-thou straightway?“

7235 „ez was mir leit.“ ‚dû hâtest recht.‘
„it was to-me sorrowful.“ ‚thou hadst right.‘

„alsô ist ez noch.“ ‚neinâ, gût knecht!‘
„so is it still.“ ‚no-no, good knight!‘

„sal ich des vorgezzin?“ ‚hêre, jâ.‘
„shall I it forget?“ ‚lord, yes.‘

„ich enmag, ez is mir zu nâ.“
„I can-not, it is to-me too near.“

‚wie nâ?‘ „an mîme herzin.“
‚how near?‘ „at my heart.“

‚des hât sie grôzen smerzen.‘
‚of-it has she great pain.‘

„her ist ir lange vorgân.“
„it is to-her long passed.“

‚zwâre he enist: dû wilt sie slân!‘
‚truly it is-not: thou wilt her slay!‘

„wâ mete?“ ‚daz dû ir vromde bist.‘
„where with?“ ‚that thou to-her strange art.‘

„daz ist ir lîp.“ ‚zwâre ez enist.‘
„that is to-her dear.“ ‚truly it is-not.‘

‚ich wêne ez sî.“ ‚nein ez nît.‘
‚I believe it be.“ ‚no it not.‘

„ir was doch daz harte lîp,
„to-her was yet that very dear,

dô sie ez selbe hîz,
when she it herself bade,

daz man mich slûg unde stîz
that one me struck and pushed

unde mich von ir treib:
and me from her drove:

dô was ez ir nicht leit,
then was it to-her not sorrowful,

wen sie des lachete sêre.“
for she at-it laughed sorely.“

‚daz wil sie nû immermêre
‚that will she now evermore

bûzen, swie dû gebûtest:
atone, however thou commandest:

daz meiste teil der lûte
the greatest part of-the people

brichet unde bûzzet echt,
breaks and atones lawfully,

wen gnâde ist bezzir denne recht.
for grace is better than right.

sie sûchit dîne genâde,
she seeks thy grace,

ire trûwe saltû entphâhen.
her faith shalt-thou receive.

swaz sie dir hât zu leide getân,
whatever she to-thee has to sorrow done,

des wil sie dir zu bûzze stân
for-it will she to-thee to atonement stand

nâch gnâdin und nâch rechte.
after grace and after right.

sie enmag kein dir nicht vechtin,
she may against thee not fight,

sie enwil sîn nicht gerûchen:
she will of-it not care:

sie wil genâde sûchen,
she will grace seek,

wen daz recht ist ir zu swâr.
for the right is to-her too heavy.

ab sie dir daz entbîten tar,
if she to-thee that send-word dare,

sie entbûtet dir iren dînist
she sends to-thee her service

und allez daz dir lîp ist,
and all that to-thee dear is,

daz sie daz allez gerne tû
that she that all gladly do

und entbûtit dir dar zû,
and sends-word to-thee there to,

daz sie dir zu êrin
that she to-thee to honors

treget ein hemede hêrîn
wears a shirt of-hair

allir nêhist irem lîbe.
of-all nearest her body.

wiltû sie nû lenger mîden,
(if)-wilt-thou her now longer shun,

sô wert ir nimmir leides bûz.
so becomes to-her never of-sorrow remedy.

hêre, ich sûche dînen fûz
lord, I seek thy foot

daz du schîre kumest dâr sî sî:
that thou soon comest where she be:

sô wirt sie allir sorgin vrî‘
so becomes she of-all cares free‘

„Des gewinne ich nimmir mût,
„Of-it get I never mind,

wen ez mir nicht wêre gût;
for it to-me not were good;

des saltû mir helfin jên:
of-it shalt-thou me help avow:

mir mochte lîchte alsô geschên,
to-me might easily so happen,

als mir dô nêhist geschach,
as to-me then lately happened,

dô sie mir sach gebin manchen slach
when she to-me saw given many-a blow

unde daz selbe hîz,
and that same bade,

daz man mich slûg unde stîz.“
that one me struck and pushed.“

‚entrûwen ich dir des verpflige,
‚in-truth I to-thee of-it pledge,

daz sie dir dîne slege
that she to-thee thy blows

bûzit, ab ez dir sî lîp.‘
atones, if it to-thee be dear.‘

„nein, ich enkome dar nît,
„no, I come thither not,

wen ez wêre nicht mîn vrome.“
for it were not my gain.“

‚hêre, dû salt dar komen
‚lord, thou shalt thither come

dorch mîner vrauwin lîbe,
for my lady's love,

dar zû wil ich dir dînen
there to will I thee serve

und dorch dîn selbes frumecheit
and for thy self's prowess

und dorch die grôze arebeit
and for the great toil

die mîn vrauwe nâch dir hât,
which my lady for thee has,

wen ir kummerlîche wât
for her grievous garment

unsanfte an legit:
ungently on lies:

daz hêrîn hemde daz sie tregit
the hair shirt which she wears

nêhest irer wîzen hût.
next-to her white skin.

hêre, dû bist doch ir trût
lord, thou art yet her beloved

vor allin die sie î gewan.
before all whom she ever got.

nû lâ dich ir ungemach
now let thee her hardship

dorch dîn gûte irbarmen
through thy goodness pity

und trôste sie vil armen.‘
and comfort her very poor-one.‘

„Pîloise, dû bist ein bote gût:
„Piloise, thou art a messenger good:

ich wil bekêrin mînen mût.
I will turn my mind.

dû sagest mir wêrlîchen,
thou tellest me truly,

daz die koninginne rîche
that the queen rich

nâch mir sî in rûwen?“
for me be in grief?“

‚die hât sie in trûwen
‚that has she in truth

daz ich sô grôze nî vornam.‘
that I so great never perceived.‘

„ich was ir ein wêning gram,
„I was to-her a little hostile,

nu wil ich ir abir holt sîn.“
now will I to-her again loyal be.“

‚des lône dir mîn trechtîn!‘
‚for-it reward thee my Lord!‘

„vornim mich ein luzel vorbaz:
„hear me a little further:

dû salt ir von mir sagin daz,
thou shalt to-her from me say that,

daz sie daz hemede ûz zî:
that she the shirt off draw:

ich enwart ir sô gram nî,
I became to-her so hostile never,

daz ich ir des icht gunde,
that I to-her it aught granted,

daz sie lange stunde
that she long hour

daz hêrîn hemede trûge;
the hair shirt wore;

ez wêre ouch nicht gefûge.
it were also not fitting.

ich wil sie zu gnâdin entvân
I will her to graces receive

und wil sie des genîzzen lân,
and will her of-it enjoy let,

daz dû sô gût bote bist,
that thou so good messenger art,

und, daz weiz der heilig Crist,
and, that knows the holy Christ,

dorch mînen willen allirmeist.
for my will most-of-all.

sô schîre sô ich hân geleist
as soon as I have performed

ein ding daz ich gelabit habe,
a thing which I promised have,

sô machstû mîner vrauwen sagin
so mayst-thou to-my lady say

daz ich sie denne wil gesên,
that I her then will see,

swaz mir dar umme sulle geschên;
whatever to-me there for shall happen;

wen ich habe gelabit vor wâr
for I have promised for true

daz ich sie mîden sal ein jâr
that I her shun shall a year

daz ich ir spreche noch en sê,
that I to-her speak nor — see,

ir sî wol adir wê.
to-her be well or woe.

swen daz jâr irgangin is,
whenever the year passed is,

sô sal sie des sîn gewis,
so shall she of-it be certain,

daz ich zu hant zû ir vare:
that I at once to her go:

in dem meien kome ich dare.“
in the May come I thither.“

Pîloise der was sich dô
Piloise he was himself then

beide trûrig unde vrô:
both sorrowful and glad:

vrô daz her den zorn vorkôs
glad that he the anger renounced

und dar umme vroudinlôs,
and there for joyless,

daz her sie nicht wolde sên
that he her not would see

eir der winter wêre vorgên,
before the winter were passed,

als her gelabit habete.
as he promised had.

Pîloise dô sagete
Piloise then said

‚hêre, nû gebût mir,
‚lord, now command me,

ich wil nû scheidin von dir
I will now part from thee

und wil mîner vrauwen sagin
and will to-my lady say

beide von vroude und von clagin
both of joy and of lament

als ich hîr vornomen hân.‘
as I here heard have.‘

„dû salt in die stat gân
„thou shalt into the town go

zû der herberge mîn,
to the lodging my,

tû als ich nicht kenne dîn
do as-if I not know thee

und salt mich mînes gûtes betin:
and shalt me for-my goods ask:

sô heize ich nâch des landes setin
so bid I after the land's custom

dir etewaz gebin.
to-thee something give.

dan hebe dich von den wegin
then raise thyself from the ways

und sage der werdin vrauwen dîn
and tell the worthy lady thy

daz sie dorch den willen mîn
that she for the will my

daz hêrîn hemede ûz tû;
the hair shirt off do;

und sage ir ouch dar zû
and tell her also there to

swaz sô ich ir habe entboten.“
whatever so I to-her have sent-word.“

Pîloise dankete gote
Piloise thanked God

und ted als in der hêre hîz.
and did as him the lord bade.

Tristrant im dô gebin lîz
Tristrant to-him then give let

hundert schillinge
hundred shillings

gûter phenninge.
of-good pennies.

Pîloise nam dô urlof
Piloise took then leave

dorch allen des hêren hof
through all the lord's court

daz in nîman bekande.
that him no-one knew.

dô was in dem lande
then was in the land

jârmarket in einer stad.
yearly-market in a town.

Pîloise dô Tristranden bat
Piloise then Tristrant asked

daz her in dar wîsen lîz.
that he him thither show let.

zu Kurnevâles dâr ouch hîz
at Cornwall there also was-called

eine stat rechte alsô die:
a town right as this-one:

vor wâr mag ich daz sagen hie,
for true may I that say here,

daz sie hîzen beide
that they were-called both

zû sant Michelssteine
at Saint Michael's-stone

und wâren vil nâch ebin rîche
and were very near evenly rich

und jârmarket was dâ gelîche:
and yearly-market was there alike:

zu sente Michahêlis misse
at Saint Michael's mass

enwart dô nicht vorgezzen
was then not forgotten

grôz jârmarket alle jâr.
great yearly-market all years.

dô lîf der knape dar
then ran the squire thither

und koufte swaz he wolde.
and bought whatever he would.

dô ted he als her solde:
then did he as he should:

dô her sîn ding gar geschûf,
when he his thing wholly arranged,

zu hant her sich dannen hûf
at once he himself thence raised

zu lande wedir obir sê.
to land back over sea.

wêre he dô snel als ein rê,
(if)-were he then swift as a roe,

daz wêre im [von herzin] wesin lîp:
that would-have to-him [from heart] been dear:

dô mochte des gewesin nît,
then could of-it have-been naught,

he muste gân als ein man.
he must go as a man.

dô he zu Tintanjôl quam
when he to Tintajol came

und he vor den koning gîng,
and he before the king went,

der hêre in dô wol entvîng
the lord him then well received

und die vrauwe dar zû.
and the lady there to.

der koning vrâgete in dô,
the king asked him then,

wannen her quême
whence he came

und wâ he die hafe nême
and where he the goods took

daz her sô rîche wêre.
that he so rich were.

dô vorchte sich die vrauwe sêre
then feared herself the lady sorely

daz he mochte missesprechin:
that he might misspeak:

des begunde ir ûz brechen
for-it began to-her out to-break

der sweiz ûz irem lîbe.
the sweat out-of her body.

*

(lacuna)

The Pilgrim

XI

Before the king, Piloise speaks of a market at Saint Michael's Stone that made him rich; the queen grasps his meaning and hears Tristrant's message from him in private. In May Tristrant and Kurneval come as pilgrims, find Tinas away, and lie in the old thornbush, watching the road all night. At morning a friendly knight rides by asleep, and Tristrant, rather than wake him, holds the horse by the mane until it shies. Tristrant asks him to carry his ring to the queen, who has Mark set another hunt at Blankenland and keep Antret behind to escort her. Brangene has died, and the queen mourns her beyond measure. Gimele rides with her, and Perenis keeps watch.

Pîloise wol gesach
Piloise well saw

daz die vrauwe sorgin plach,
that the lady of-cares took-care,

und sprach vil listiglîchen
and spoke very cunningly

,ô hêre koning rîche,
,o lord king rich,

swer sô wol gebeitin mag,
whoever so well wait may,

her gelebit dicke den tag
he lives-to-see often the day

daz im gesenftit wirt sîn mût,
that to-him softened becomes his mind,

daz im lîp unde gût
that to-him dear and good

geschît dicke beide:
happens often both:

zû sant Michelssteine
at Saint Michael's-stone

was ich an desim markettage:
was I on this market-day:

da gewan ich alle mîne habe
there got I all my goods

daz ich nû bin sô rîche.‘
that I now am so rich.‘

dô wândens alle gelîche
then thought-it all alike

daz er ez sprêche durch daz,
that he it spoke for that,

wen er wol frô was.
for he well glad was.

dar mit wolde he im daz vorslân:
there with would he from-him that conceal:

dô merkete die vrauwe sân
then marked the lady straightway

waz he dar mete meinete.
what he there with meant.

von vroudin sie dô weinete
from joys she then wept

und gîng an ire heimelîcheit.
and went to her privacy.

Pîloise was ouch dô bereit
Piloise was also then ready

und quam zû ir alzuhant
and came to her at-once

und sagete swaz ir Tristrant
and told whatever to-her Tristrant

bî im entboten habete.
by him sent-word had.

die vrauwe dô vorclagete
the lady then got-over

swaz ir ze leide î geschach:
whatever to-her to sorrow ever happened:

sô was ir daz ein grôz ungemach.
so was to-her that a great vexation.

daz sie den aller besten man
that she the of-all best man

des sie kunde gewan
of-whom she knowledge got

eir nicht solde sên,
sooner not should see,

eir der winter wêre vorgên.
before the winter were passed.

Zu hant dô der meie quam,
At once when the May came,

Tristrant grâwe cleider nam
Tristrant gray clothes took

an sich unde vromde schû,
on himself and strange shoes,

schurpen und einen stap dar zû,
scrip and a staff there to,

als her wêre ein pilgerîm.
as-if he were a pilgrim.

ouch cleidete sich der knape sîn
also clad himself the squire his

Kurnevâl im gelîche.
Kurneval to-him alike.

do begundin sie beide slîchen
then began they both to-creep

zû hêren Tînas hûs.
to lord Tinas's house.

dô was her geretin ûz
then was he ridden out

daz sie sîn nicht en vundin.
that they him not — found.

der werde Tristrant dô begunde
the worthy Tristrant then began

gedenkin, waz he tête.
to-think, what he should-do.

daz wârin Kurnevâles rête:
those were Kurneval's counsels:

her solde bî die strâzzin gên,
he should by the roads go,

ab her îman mochte irspên,
if he anyone might spy,

der sîn bote wêre.
who his messenger were.

dô gîngen die wellêre
then went the pilgrims

legin in den selbin dorn,
to-lie into the same thorn-bush,

dâ he ouch dâ bevorn
where he also there before

mit Kehenîse inne lach:
with Kehenis in lay:

des volkis her dô vil gesach
of-the folk he then much saw

zîn hin unde dare
go hence and thither

und wart doch nîmanes geware
and became yet of-no-one aware

deme he mochte getrûwen
whom he might trust

dêr im zû der vrauwen
who for-him to the lady

worbe sîne boteschaft.
might-carry his message.

aldâr beleib he obir nacht
all-there remained he over night

daz her der vrauwen nicht en sach.
that he the lady not — saw.

sô schiere sô ez wart tach,
as soon as it became day,

dar nâch in korzir stunt,
there after in short hour,

dô quam im ein lîber vrûnt
then came to-him a dear friend

aleine dort her geretin.
alone there hither ridden.

deme was der slâf mete
to-him was the sleep with

sô wunderlîchen harte,
so wondrously hard,

daz er in bî der warte
that he him by the lookout

sach nicht vor ime stân;
saw not before him stand;

he was doch kein im gegân
he was yet toward him gone

und wolde im zû sprechin.
and would to-him to speak.

dô wolde he im den slâf nicht brechin
then would he to-him the sleep not break

als her vor im obir reit.
as he before him over rode.

daz was ein grôze togenheit,
that was a great courtesy,

daz he slâfin lîz den degin.
that he sleep let the warrior.

he meinte, he hête gelegin
he thought, he had lain

die nacht bî sîner amîen.
the night by his sweetheart.

he wolde sich eir vorzîen
he would himself rather forgo

des gewerbes sîner boteschaft,
the errand of-his message,

eir er im brêche sînen slâf.
before he to-him broke his sleep.

Bî dem manen he sîn ros vîng.
By the mane he his horse caught.

vil lange he dar ane hîng
very long he there on hung

daz her in nicht irwackete
that he him not woke

biz daz daz ros irschrackete
until that the horse took-fright

und vûr von deme wege:
and went from the way:

dô irwachete êrst der degin.
then awoke only-then the warrior.

wie schiere her in irkande
how soon he him recognized

den [vil] kûnen Tristranden!
the [very] bold Tristrant!

ouch wart he vrô, des hâte he recht.
also became he glad, of-it had he right.

do entving he den gûten knecht
then received he the good knight

vil harte minneglîche
very exceedingly lovingly

und sprach frûntlîchen,
and spoke in-friendly-way,

ab her icht wolde
if he aught would

daz he dorch in tûn solde,
that he for him do should,

wie gerne he daz tête.
how gladly he that would-do.

‚jâ, vil gerne ich dich bête
‚yes, very gladly I thee would-ask

daz du worbest mîne bateschaft.‘
that thou shouldst-carry my message.‘

„daz tû ich sô ich beste mag
„that do I as I best may

und wirbe dir ez getrûwelîche.“
and carry for-thee it faithfully.“

‚des lône dir got der rîche!
‚for-it reward thee God the rich!

nû nim hin daz vingerlîn
now take hence the little-ring

und breng ez der koningîn,
and bring it to-the queen,

daz sie dir geloube dar bî
that she thee believe there by

und sage ir daz ich hîr sî
and tell her that I here be

und sie gerne wolde sên
and her gladly would see

(daz enmag nicht wol geschên,
(that may not well happen,

sie welle denne des vlîz haben,
she unless-will then of-it diligence have,

daz der koning rete jagin
that the king ride to-hunt

ze Blankenlande ûf die wise)
at Blankenland upon the meadow)

und daz ich dâ wil ligen
and that I there will lie

in dem dorne, dâ ich vor lag,
in the thorn-bush, where I before lay,

dâ sie mich allirnêhest sach.
where she me most-lately saw.

ich vordînez ummir mêre:
I repay-it ever more:

frûnt, dorch dînes selbes êre,
friend, for thy self's honor,

dû salt helin desin rât,
thou shalt conceal this counsel,

wen ez mir an mînen lîp gât,
for it to-me at my life goes,

ab man mich alhîr siet.'
if one me all-here sees.'

„dar ane en zwîvele dû nît:
„there on — doubt thou not:

ich werbez âne falsche list
I carry-it without false cunning

alsô lîp als dû mir bist."
as dear as thou to-me art."

Do der ritter zû hofe quam
When the knight to court came

und die koningîn vornam
and the queen perceived

[des kûnen] Tristrandes boteschaft
[*of-the bold*] *Tristrant's message*

und daz vingerlîn gesach,
and the little-ring saw,

der mêre wart sie vil vrô:
of-the tidings became she very glad:

mit dem koninge schûf sie dô
with the king arranged she then

daz abir worde ûf geleit
that again became up laid

ein jagin, des worden sie al bereit
a hunt, for-it became they all ready

kein Blankenland in die vûrstad.
toward Blankenland into the suburb.

swes die vrauwe den koning bat,
whatever the lady the king asked,

des en lîz her dô nît.
it — left he then not.

die vrauwe sprach ‚mir ist lîp
the lady spoke ‚to-me is dear

daz Antrêd heime belîbe,
that Antret at-home remain,

sô mag he mit uns wîben
so may he with us women

danne nâch dir rîten.‘
then after thee ride.‘

der koning hîz in bîten
the king bade him wait

vil gezogenlîche
very courteously

daz er die frawen rîche
that he the lady rich

vûrte in den walt breite.
led into the wood broad.

Antrêd dô gerne beite
Antret then gladly waited

bî der koninginne
by the queen

und wolde sie bringen
and would her bring

dar nâch zu sînem hêren:
there after to his lord:

daz was im grôze êre.
that was to-him great honor.

sô schîre sô die vrauwe az,
as soon as the lady ate,

mit irem gesinde sie ûf saz
with her household she up sat

und reit hin zû dem koninge.
and rode hence to the king.

dô was ez leidir obele
then was it alas ill

der zarten koninginne komen:
to-the tender queen come:

der tôd hâte ir genomen
the death had from-her taken

Brangêne daz schône wîp.
Brangene the fair woman.

die was ir lîp sam der lîp.
she was to-her dear as the life.

sie clageten sie alle
they lamented her all

mit mancheme schalle
with many-a clamor

und ouch die koninginne.
and also the queen.

eia, der grôzin minne
ah, the great love

die sie zu iren vrûnden trûg!
which she to her friends bore!

dô was jâmers vil genûg,
then was of-grief much enough,

dô sie ir ende genam.
when she her end took.

die koninginne lobesam
the queen praiseworthy

die clagete sie ûz der mâzzin.
she lamented her out-of the measure.

wie mochte sie ez gelâzzin?
how might she it leave?

sie muste grôze rûwe hân,
she must great grief have,

wen sie hâte ir lîbes vil getân:
for she had to-her of-love much done:

des trûg sie jâmers vil,
of-it bore she of-grief much,

des sult ir wol gelauben mir.
of-it shall you well believe me.

dô reit Gimêle mete.
then rode Gimele with.

swaz die koninginne tete,
whatever the queen did,

daz wuste Gimêle gare.
that knew Gimele wholly.

ouch mustes nemen ware
also must-it take heed

der kemmerêre Perenîs.
the chamberlain Perenis.

dô was die koninginne wîs,
then was the queen wise,

des sie dicke vromen nam.
of-it she often gain took.

The Leap and the Throw

XII

At the lookout the queen's horse bolts, and while Antret chases it she speaks with Tristrant. A hunted hart runs toward the thornbush, and the queen draws the hunt away by crying after the hounds; that night she and Tristrant meet. In the morning Kurneval is missing, and Tristrant, still a pilgrim, passes through the king's people at their sports. A kinsman knows him and, for the queen's sake, persuades him to shoot, leap, and throw the stone; his rags tear to show scarlet, and he slips away before anyone thinks. Mark guesses it was Tristrant and sends his household to search the wood, but Tristrant has reached Kurneval and gone home, where Kehenis and his family welcome him.

dô sie zû der warte quam,
when she to the lookout came,

dâ Tristrant der degin lach,
where Tristrant the warrior lay,

zû dem volke sie dô sprach
to the folk she then spoke

daz ez an die vûrstad rete
that it to the suburb rode

und ir dâr nîman enbete 7590
and for-her there no-one waited

wen Antrêt und Gimêle.
except Antret and Gimele.

sie wolde eine wîle
she would a while

blîben an der warte.
remain at the lookout.

daz volg dô dannen kârte.
the folk then thence turned.

Nedir stegin die vrauwen zwû
Down climbed the ladies two

und der leide Antrêt dar zû.
and the loathsome Antret there to.

got schende in daz her mite reit!
God shame him that he with rode!

ez wêre in lîp adir leit,
it were to-them dear or sorrowful,

he was dâ der dritte:
he was there the third:

he was der vrauwen sippe
he was the lady's kin

daz er wol âne vâre
that he well without danger

mit ir offinbâre
with her openly

beleib swâ he wolde.
remained wherever he would.

die koningîn dô solde
the queen then should

besprechin Tristranden
speak-with Tristrant

eir sie zu Blankenlande
before she to Blankenland

ûf die wisen quême.
onto the meadow came.

daz ez Antrêt nicht vornême,
that it Antret not perceived,

wie mochte ummir daz gewesin?
how might ever that be?

do begunde sie blûmen lesin
then began she flowers to-gather

die bî der warte stundin.
which by the lookout stood.

dô hôrte sie die hunde
then heard she the hounds

vaste loufen her und dar:
hard run hither and thither:

die frawe nam ir gûte war.
the lady took of-them good heed.

dô sie quâmen zû der warte,
when they came to the lookout,

mîner vrauwen pferd dô harte
my lady's horse then hard

irschrag, dô ez den herz sach
was-startled, when it the hart saw

daz ez den zoim zubrach
that it the bridle broke-asunder

und lîf vaste den walt în.
and ran hard the wood in.

Antrêt sprang ûf daz pferd sîn
Antret sprang upon the horse his

und wolde daz pferd vân.
and would the horse catch.

dô quam die vrauwe gegân
then came the lady going

und besprach ir lîbez trût,
and spoke-with her dear beloved,

nicht stille sundir obir lût.
not still but out loud.

sie torste nicht dar în gân,
she dared not there in go,

ouch torste ez Tristrant nicht bestân,
also dared it Tristrant not undertake,

daz her hîr ûz gînge.
that he hither out went.

wie sie ez ane vînge
how she it on took

daz sie sprêche ir lîbez lîp?
that she spoke-with her dear love?

wuste ich daz sie in icht
(if)-knew I that she him aught

nâch ir schîre hîze komen!
after her soon bade come!

sage, hâstû nicht vornomen,
say, hast-thou not heard,

ab sie es icht hîze?
if she it aught bade?

‚ich wêne sie des nicht lîze.‘
‚I believe she it not left-off.‘

„wie wênestû?“ ‚ich getrûwe ez wol.‘
„how believest-thou?“ ‚I trust it well.‘

„und wie dû?“ ‚nein, ich sol
„and how thou?“ ‚no, I shall

eir gedenken, eir ich trûwe.‘
rather think, than I trust.‘

„sô wizze daz in die vrauwe
„so know that him the lady

in langer zît nî gesach!“
in long time never saw!“

‚ich wêne, ich des wol trûwen mach
‚I believe, I it well trust may

daz sie in wêrlîche
that she him truly

bat vlîzlîche
asked earnestly

nâch ir schiere komen dar
after her soon come thither

und wîsete on al rechte war.‘
and showed him all aright whither.‘

ein jeger dô wedirstîz
a hunter then drove-back

den herz daz he abir lîf
the hart that he again ran

kein der selbin warte:
toward the same lookout:

zu dem dornenpusche he kârte
to the thorn-bush he turned

dar her Tristrant inne lach.
where lord Tristrant in lay.

dô he die lûte dâr gesach,
when he the people there saw,

do irschrak he vil sêre
then was-startled he very sorely

und ted die wedirkêre,
and made the turn-back,

und lîf einen andern weg hin.
and ran an other way hence.

der koning volgete vaste im
the king followed hard him

daz her des wart geware:
that he of-it became aware:

dô reit her îlende dare
then rode he hastening thither

und wolde gerne hân gesên,
and would gladly have seen,

waz dem herze wêre geschên
what to-the hart were happened

dô he wedir was kârt.
when he back was turned.

dô lîf die vrauwe darewart
then ran the lady thitherward

dar die herz hin was,
where the hart hence was,

und half daz Tristrant genas;
and helped that Tristrant survived;

wen sie vaste rîf,
for she loudly called,

der herz vor ir hin lîf.
the hart before her hence ran.

nâch den hunden sie schrê:
after the hounds she cried:

der koning gedâchte, ez tête ir wê.
the king thought, it did to-her woe.

dô muste er des geswîgen
then must he of-it keep-silent

und muste ir helfen schrîen.
and must her help cry.

dar nâ in korzin stunden
there after in short hours

quâmen alle hunde
came all hounds

dô ûf die rechten vart
then upon the right track

und jageten alle dortwart.
and hunted all thitherward.

der koning in dô mete reit:
the king them then with rode:

daz was der vrauwen nicht leit.
that was to-the lady not sorrowful.

Dô stunt ez nicht lange
Then stood it not long

eir Antrêt hâte gevangen
before Antret had caught

daz pfert unde quam dâ mete
the horse and came there with

zû der warte geretin.
to the lookout ridden.

in zorne he zû der vrauwen sprach
in anger he to the lady spoke

‚ich habe allin den tag
‚I have all the day

nâch desim pferde gerant.‘
after this horse run.‘

dô sprach die vrauwe zu hant
then spoke the lady at once

„ich wolde daz dû desin pagen
„I would that thou this nag

allin tag soldest jagin!“
all day shouldst hunt!“

daz sprach sie spotlîchen.
that spoke she mockingly.

ich sage ûch wêrlîche:
I tell you truly:

sie meinte daz doch alsô.
she meant that yet so.

ûf sâzen sie dô
up sat they then

und retin an die vûrstat.
and rode to the suburb.

swes die vrauwe Tristranden bat,
whatever the lady Tristrant asked,

ich wêne he des nicht enlîz.
I believe he it not left-off.

dar sie in zû ir komen hîz,
where she him to her come bade,

dar quam he gewislîche.
there came he certainly.

sie entvîng in minniglîche,
she received him lovingly,

die schône koninginne.
the fair queen.

mit liebe unde minne
with love and affection

heilte sie im sîne slege,
healed she to-him his blows,

daz ir vorgaz der degin
that them forgot the warrior

als he nî worde geslagin;
as-if he never were struck;

ouch vorgaz sie irer clage
also forgot she her lament

daz sie daz hêrîn hemede trûg:
that she the hair shirt wore:

sie hâtin vroude genûg
they had joy enough

dô sie den helt umme vîng.
when she the hero about caught.

des morgens, dô her dannen gîng,
in-the morning, when he thence went,

do en vant he Kurnevâles nît:
then — found he of-Kurneval not:

he wuste nicht, waz im was geschît.
he knew not, what to-him was happened.

dô he sîn nicht en vant,
when he him not — found,

dô sûchte in der wîgant
then sought him the warrior

sô lange in dem walde,
so long in the wood,

biz die koningîn Îsalde
until the queen Isalde

und der koning Marke az
and the king Mark ate

und ir gesinde ûf gesaz
and their household up sat

und an eine andere fûrstad reit:
and to an other suburb rode:

des gewan he abir erbeit.
of-it got he again toil.

Tristrant der gûte
Tristrant the good

gedâchte an sînem mûte
thought in his mind

‚ich sûche in hîr zu lange:
‚I seek him here too long:

her ist lîchte vor gegangen
he is perhaps before gone

dâ wir ane sullen schiffen.
where we on shall take-ship.

hête ich mich vorstrichen
(if)-had I myself hurried

und nâch im sên hûte vrô,
and after him seen today early,

sô wêrez bezzir denne nû‘
so would-it-be better than now‘

dâchte her an sînem mûte.
thought he in his mind.

dô hûb sich der gûte
then took himself the good-one

nâch sînen geverten sân.
after his companions straightway.

zû der vûrstat he quam
to the suburb he came

dâr des koningis sinde lach.
where the king’s household lay.

dô her die lûte dô gesach,
when he the people then saw,

dô wolde he wedir kêren:
then would he back turn:

dô vorchte he sêre
then feared he sorely

daz man sîn worde geware,
that one of-him might-become aware,

ab he nêher quême dare.
if he nearer came thither.

he was in alzu nâhe komen:
he was to-them all-too near come:

he dâchte, ez wêre im kein vrome
he thought, it were to-him no gain

ab he wedir kârte.
if he back turned.

nicht lengir he dô warte
not longer he then waited

und begunde dorch sie hin gân.
and began through them hence to-go.

dô sach her daz volg stân:
then saw he the folk stand:

etlîche schozzen den schaft,
some shot the shaft,

etlîche sprungin obir eine graft,
some leapt over a ditch,

sumelîche worfin den stein.
some threw the stone.

do irkante in der ritter ein,
then recognized him of-the knights one,

der was sîn lîber nâvrûnt
he was his dear kinsman

und gebârte zû der selbin stunt
and behaved at the same hour

ab her sîn nî hête irkant.
as-if he him never had recognized.

dô gîng der hêre Tristrant
then went the lord Tristrant

sîne strâze vor sich.
his road before himself.

‚nîman en achtet ûf mich‘
‚no-one — heeds on me‘

gedâchte der helt dô.
thought the hero then.

des was er âne mâze vrô,
of-it was he without measure glad,

daz he der freise genas
that he the peril escaped

und wol fur komen was
and well forth come was

daz im nicht argis was getân.
that to-him nothing of-harm was done.

zu im hûb sich der ritter sân
to him took himself the knight straightway

der in irkant habete.
who him recognized had.

nâch im er dô trabete
after him he then trotted

und bat in daz he stunde.
and asked him that he should-stand.

der hêre dô nicht engunde
the lord then not granted

nîman dêr in irkante.
anyone who him recognized.

der ritter in dô nante
the knight him then named

und bat in dorch sînen willen
and asked him for his will

hin wider mit im stille
hence back with him quietly

an die selben vûrstat gân.
to the same suburb go.

‚ez wêre mir nicht gût getân.‘
‚it would-be to-me not good done.‘

„ez en werret dir wêrlîche nît.“
„it — harms thee truly not.“

‚waz sal ich dar?‘ „mir wêre lîp
‚what shall I thither?‘ „to-me would-be dear

daz du eins schozzest den schaft
that thou once shotest the shaft

und eins sprungest obir die graft
and once leapedst over the ditch

und eins worfest den stein:
and once threwest the stone:

sô wirt der dinge kein
so becomes of-the things none

von nîman an dîn zil brâcht.“
by anyone to thy mark brought.“

‚du hâst dich nicht wol dar an bedâcht
‚thou hast thyself not well there on bethought

daz dû dorch sô cleinen rûm
that thou for so little fame

mich ein ding heizzest tûn
me a thing biddest do

des ich verlore den lîp.‘
for-which I would-lose the life.‘

„ich brenge dich âne strît
„I bring thee without strife

her wedir getrûwelîche.“
hither back faithfully.“

‚dû bitest tumlîche,
‚thou askest foolishly,

ouch wêre ich selbir nicht wîs,
also would-be I myself not wise,

ab ich dorch sô cleinen prîs
if I for so little prize

an die stad gînge,
to the place went,

dâ man mich lîchte vînge
where one me easily caught

adir mich irslûge:
or me slew:

dîne rede ist ungefûge,
thy speech is unfitting,

dû salt ir dorch mich abe komen:
thou shalt of-it for me off come:

ich enhête sîn keinen vromen.‘
I would-have of-it no gain.‘

Der ritter sprach abir dô
The knight spoke again then

„ich wil dich es betin alsô hô
„I will thee of-it ask so high

daz du ez âne zwîvel tûn mûst:
that thou it without doubt do must:

ich bete dich daz dû ez tûst
I ask thee that thou it doest

dorch der koninginne willen,
for the queen's will,

bî der dû dicke stille
by whom thou often quietly

lîplîchen hâst gelegin.“
lovingly hast lain.“

dô gîng mit im der degin
then went with him the warrior

wedir an die selbin stad
back to the same place

und ted als in der ritter bat.
and did as him the knight asked.

al swîgene he dô gîng,
all silent he then went,

den schaft he in die hant gevîng;
the shaft he into the hand caught;

einen schuz he dô schôz,
a shot he then shot,

der was sô freislîchen grôz,
which was so terribly great,

daz sie daz alle musten jên,
that they that all must avow,

daz sie nie hêten gesên
that they never had seen

einen alsô grôzen schuz.
a so great shot.

daz was doch Tristrandes nuz,
that was yet Tristrant's use,

daz daz volk lîf alliz dare
that the folk ran all thither

und nam des grôzen schuzzes ware.
and took of-the great shot heed.

dô wart michil grôz gedrang:
then was much great press:

dô gîng der hêre unde sprang
then went the lord and leapt

obir einen graben sêre wît
over a ditch exceedingly wide

daz ime zû der zît
that to-him at the time

die grâwe hose dô zubrach
the gray hose then broke-asunder

und man im dar dorch sach
and one to-him there through saw

scharlachen an haben.
scarlet on have.

ich wil ûch wêrlîche sagen:
I will to-you truly say:

er hâte daz cleid vaste an,
he had the garment firmly on,

den hût er nicht abe nam;
the hat he not off took;

dar an er gar rechte tete.
there on he wholly rightly did.

dô gîng der hêre dar zu stete
then went the lord thither at once

und warf sô verre den stein,
and threw so far the stone,

daz abir ir nichein
that again of-them none

sô grôzen wurf nî vornam.
so great throw ever perceived.

von ungelucke ez dô quam,
from misfortune it then came,

daz im der grâwe rock zureiz,
that to-him the gray coat tore,

dar dorch man abir, got wol weiz,
there through one again, God well knows,

sach scharlachin glîzzin.
saw scarlet gleam.

do begunde he dannen strîchen:
then began he thence to-steal:

ich wêne her tete recht.
I believe he did right.

dô lîzen sie den gûten knecht
then let they the good knight

gân swar er wolde.
go wherever he would.

dô quam ez als ez solde
then came it as it should

daz sich nîman vorsan
that himself no-one bethought

umme den starken man
about the strong man

eir he verre enweg was:
before he far away was:

von gelucke he abir genas.
by luck he again escaped.

Des âbendis dô der koning quam
In-the evening when the king came

und die mêre [recht] vornam,
and the tidings [rightly] heard,

waz dâ wunders was geschên
what there of-wonder was happened

und daz ez was ein pilgerîm
and that it was a pilgrim

der ez getân habete
who it done had

und man im ouch sagete
and one to-him also said

daz man sach schînen
that one saw shine

dorch den grâwen rock sînen
through the gray coat his

scharlakin dorchhauwen,
scarlet slashed,

dô gîng der koning schauwen
then went the king to-behold

und mit im manch helt jung
and with him many-a hero young

beide worf und den sprung
both throw and the leap

und den schoz mit dem schafte.
and the shot with the shaft.

in sînem mûte he dâchte
in his mind he thought

daz hête Tristrant getân
that had Tristrant done

und bat sîn gesinde sân
and asked his household straightway

daz sie den man sôchten,
that they the man sought,

ab sie on ergin vinden mochten.
if they him anywhere find might.

vil harte snelliglîchen
very exceedingly swiftly

gîngens alle gelîche
went-they all alike

wîten sûchen in den walt.
widely to-seek into the wood.

Tristrant der helt balt
Tristrant the hero bold

was zu Kurnevâle komen,
was to Kurneval come,

ist ez als ich habe vornomen,
(if)-is it as I have heard,

und vûr heim in sîn lant.
and went home into his land.

Kehenis der wîgant
Kehenis the warrior

entvîng in minniglîche;
received him lovingly;

sô ted der koning rîche
so did the king rich

und die koninginne
and the queen

und ouch sîn vrûndinne.
and also his lady-friend.

Nampetenis and Gariole

XIII

Nampetenis, a lord near Karahes, guards his wife Gariole behind three moats and three locked gates; whenever he rides out hunting, as he does almost daily, he drives everyone out and carries the keys himself. She had promised herself to Kehenis before her marriage, and hearing of it Nampetenis set this watch. When Kehenis rides to her wall while Nampetenis hunts, she tells him she would gladly have him if he could get in. Tristrant advises him to have her press the keys in wax; her three confidant ladies throw the wax over the moat. No smith in the land will make the keys until Tristrant's own smith, come from Tintajol, laughs that they mean to steal and refuses, then yields to Kehenis's promise of reward.

Dô saz ein rîcher herre
Then sat a rich lord

von Karahes nicht verre:
from Karahes not far:

der hîz Nampêtenîs
he was-called Nampetenis

und hâte dicke hôen prîs
and had often high prize

mit ritterschaft gewunnen.
with knighthood won.

nû hâte her des begunnen,
now had he it begun,

daz he stête birsete und jagete.
that he steadily stalked and hunted.

ein schônez wîp her habete,
a fair wife he had,

die was Garîôle genant.
she was Gariole named.

der hûte der wîgant
her guarded the warrior

sô freislîchen sêre,
so terribly sorely,

daz her sîn selbes êre
that he his self's honor

dâ mete hâte gekrenkit.
there with had weakened.

mich wundert, wes he denkit
me wonders, of-what he thinks

der sînes wîbes hûtet,
who his wife guards,

wen stât ir ir gemûte
for (if)-stands to-her her mind

nicht williglîchen dar,
not willingly thither,

sô mag he nimmer sie bewarn
so may he never her guard

mit allen sînen sinnen.
with all his senses.

wen, wil sie einen minnen,
for, (if)-will she one love,

sie tût ez âne sînen dang,
she does it against his will,

ez were korz adir lang:
it were short or long:

daz wart an desin dingen schîn.
that became in these things shown.

noch hûte des wîbes sîn
yet guarded the wife his

Nampêtenîs der hêre alsô,
Nampetenis the lord so,

daz he lîz gar hô
that he let wholly high

sîne borchmûre bewerkin.
his castle-wall build.

dese hûte sullit ir merkin:
this guarding shall you mark:

dar umme gîngen drî grabin.
there about went three ditches.

tîf und wît, hôrte ich sagin,
deep and wide, heard I tell,

ieglîcher grabe dâ wêre.
each ditch there were.

he was dâ portenêre
he was there porter

selbe zû sîner borch.
himself at his castle.

des was im doch kein nôtdorft,
of-it was to-him yet no need,

wen he hâte lûte genûg;
for he had people enough;

die sluzzele he [dâ] selbir trûg.
the keys he [there] himself carried.

swen he ergin ûz reit,
whenever he anywhere out rode,

ez wêre in lîp adir leit,
it were to-them dear or sorrowful,

do enwas nîman sô junge,
then was no-one so young,

noch sô alt, noch sô tumme,
nor so old, nor so foolish,

der in dar umme torste biten,
who him there about dared ask,

daz er in nâch vrûntlîchen siten
that he him after friendly customs

dar ûf lîze belîben.
there up let remain.

des muste mit den wîben
for-it must with the women

Garîôle belîben eine:
Gariole remain alone:

daz vordrôz sie nicht cleine.
that vexed her not little.

Daz was der helt Nampêtenis,
That was the hero Nampetenis,

von dem dâ vor Kehenis
by whom there before Kehenis

vil nâ was gevangin.
very nearly was captured.

dô was daz sô ergangen,
then was that so passed,

daz he sich schildes hâte begebin.
that he himself of-shield had given-up.

al sînen vlîz gab der degin,
all his diligence gave the warrior,

wie he behûte sîn wîp
how he guarded his wife

und wie her vrauwete sînen lîp
and how he gladdened his life

mit hetzene und mit jagene
with chasing and with hunting

so ich eir begunde ze sagene;
as I before began to tell;

wen als he von der borch reit,
for when he from the castle rode,

die lûte her alliz ûz treib,
the people he all out drove,

sie wêrin eigin adir vrî.
they were bondmen or free.

der selbin portin wârin drî.
of-the same gates were three.

die beslôz der degin alle.
them locked the warrior all.

sêt, wie ûch daz gevalle!
see, how to-you that please!

die sluzzele he mit sich vûrte.
the keys he with himself carried.

swer denne quam ze der porte,
whoever then came to the gate,

wêrez ouch die koningîn,
(if)-were-it even the queen,

die en lîz nîman ûz noch în
them — let no-one out nor in

biz daz he wedir quême.
until that he back came.

swer ir ouch den lîp nême,
whoever from-them even the life should-take,

alle die dar inne wârin
all who there within were

des ûz komenes entbârin,
of-the out coming did-without,

der enmochte nîman komen dare.
of-them might no-one come thither.

des plag he vil nâch alle tage,
that practiced he very nearly all days,

daz her wilt jagete unde schôz.
that he game hunted and shot.

sîn wîb daz sêre vordrôz,
his wife that sorely vexed,

als ez ouch wol mochte.
as it also well might.

er enrûchte ab ir die hûte tochte,
he cared-not if to-her the watch availed,

wen he was ein vreislich man.
for he was a terrible man.

swen sô he zu hûs quam,
whenever so he to house came,

si entorste nîman an sên.
she dared no-one at look.

wie mochte ir ummer wers geschên?
how might to-her ever worse happen?

Nû hâte die vrawe lîse
Now had the lady softly

gelabit Kehenîse
promised to-Kehenis

eir sie einen man nême,
before she a man took,

ab he zû ir quême,
if he to her came,

sie wolde in ummevân.
she would him embrace.

doch was ez nicht sô irgân,
yet was it not so passed,

wen ez mochte nicht vulkomen:
for it might not come-to-pass:

daz gelobede hâte vornomen
the promise had heard

Nampêtenis ir man.
Nampetenis her husband.

sô schiere, sô her sie genam,
as soon, as he her took,

do geschûf he dise hûte.
then made he this watch.

doch hâte in irem mûte
yet had in her mind

die vrauwe Kehenîsen liep.
the lady Kehenis dear.

her vorgaz ouch ir niet:
he forgot also her not:

daz ted he harte wol schîn,
that did he very well manifest,

daz he mit allen sinnen sîn
that he with all senses his

an ire minne gedâchte.
on her love thought.

die hêre dô vulbrâchte
the lord then accomplished

sînes willin ein teil:
of-his will a part:

eins tagis lîz her ez an ein heil
on-one day let he it to a chance

dô Nampêtenis jagete.
when Nampetenis hunted.

ûf sînem rosse her drabete
upon his horse he trotted

heimlîche aleine dar.
secretly alone thither.

dô wart die vrauwe sîn gewar,
then became the lady of-him aware,

wen sie was ûf die mûre gân.
for she was upon the wall gone.

do entvîng sie den helt sân
then received she the hero straightway

und hîz in willekome sîn.
and bade him welcome be.

‚nû lône ûch mîn trechtîn!'
‚now reward you my Lord!'

sprach he zû ir inniglîchen
spoke he to her inwardly

‚got mûze on ummir geswîchen
‚God may him ever fail

der dese borg beslozzin habe
who this castle locked have

daz ich ûch nicht mag gesagin,
that I to-you not may tell,

war umme ich her komen bin,
what for I hither come am,

doch wêre mir daz ein gewin‘
yet were to-me that a gain‘

(daz mochte man wol schauwin),
(that might one well see),

‚wolden ûch dese vrauwen
‚(if)-would from-you these ladies

eine wîle entwîchen
a while withdraw

daz ich ûch offenlîchen
that I to-you openly

sagete mîne boteschaft.‘
told my message.‘

zu hant sie zû den vrauwen sprach
at once she to the ladies spoke

daz sie ûf hôer woldin gân.
that they up higher would go.

daz tâtin die vrauwin sân.
that did the ladies straightway.

nû was daz wetir stille,
now was the weather still,

daz was ir beidir wille.
that was of-them both will.

Kehenis sie dô manete
Kehenis her then reminded

swes sie im gelabit habete
of-what she to-him promised had

eir sie iren man nême
before she her husband took

und sagete ir, sie enquême
and told her, she came

nî ûzer sînem mûte.
never out-of his mind.

‚dar umme, vrauwe gûte,
‚there for, lady good,

saltû mich des genîzen lân!‘
shalt-thou me of-it enjoy let!‘

dô sprach die gûte „wol an,
then spoke the good-one „well on,

Kehenis, dû wêre mir î lîp,
Kehenis, thou wert to-me ever dear,

des enmag ich gelouken nît:
it may I deny not:

wen daz ez nicht mochte sîn,
except that it not might be,

sô hête ich den willen dîn
so would-have I the will thy

vil harte gerne getân:
very exceedingly gladly done:

den selbin mût ich noch hân,
the same mind I still have,

ab ez geschên mochte
if it happen might

daz ez uns beiden tochte:
that it us both availed:

nû sîstû wol, wie ez um mich stât:
now seest-thou well, how it about me stands:

mîn hêre mich beslozzen hât
my lord me locked-in has

daz nîman zû mir komen mag.“
that no-one to me come may.“

îdoch sie wêrlîchen sprach
yet she truly spoke

daz sie ez im wol gunde,
that she it to-him well granted,

ab he daz geschaffen kunde,
if he that arrange could,

daz he zû ir mochte komen.
that he to her might come.

sie sprach „dû hâst wol vornomen,
she spoke „thou hast well heard,

wie mîn hêre mîner hûte,
how my lord me guards,

îdoch stât mîn gemûte
yet stands my mind

sô williglîchen hin zu dir,
so willingly hence to thee,

machst dû komen her zu mir,
(if)-mayst thou come hither to me,

daz ich dînen willen tû.“
that I thy will do.“

dô wart der hêre vil vrô
then became the lord very glad

und dankete der vrauwen sêre
and thanked the lady sorely

und begunde dannen kêren.
and began thence to-turn.

Kehenis der rîche
Kehenis the rich

gedâchte vlîzlîchen,
thought diligently,

wie he komen mochte
how he come might

daz ez in beidin tochte
that it them both availed

zu Garîôlen der vrauwen.
to Gariole the lady.

dar umme mochte man in schauwen
there for might one him behold

in gedanken manichvalt.
in thoughts manifold.

dô kunde der helt balt
then could the hero bold

nicht gedenkin dar zû,
not think there to,

wedir spâte noch vrû,
neither late nor early,

wie he zû ir quême
how he to her came

daz ez im kein schade wêre.
that it to-him no harm were.

zu Tristrande he dô quam,
to Tristrant he then came,

sînen rât her dar zû nam,
his counsel he there to took,

wie he zû der vrawen mochte komen.
how he to the lady might come.

dô Tristrant hâte vornomen,
when Tristrant had heard,

waz die frauwe im sagete
what the lady to-him said

und ouch vornomen habete
and also heard had

daz sie sô wol was behût,
that she so well was guarded,

he sprach ‚selle, mir dunket gût
he spoke ‚companion, to-me seems good

daz dû betist die vrauwen
that thou askest the lady

daz sie dir die sluzzele tougen
that she for-thee the keys secretly

in wachs wille drucken
into wax will press

und heimlîche dese stucke
and secretly these pieces

dir werfe obir den grabin.
to-thee throw over the ditch.

saltu denne gelucke habin,
(if)-shalt-thou then luck have,

sô kumestu zû ir denne wol.
so comest-thou to her then well.

nâch dem wachse man dan sol
after the wax one then shall

andere sluzzele gîzen,
other keys cast,

sô machstû selbe ûf slîzen
so mayst-thou thyself up unlock

die borg unde gân dar în.
the castle and go there in.

nû ich dîn râtgebe bin,
now I thy counselor am,

daz dunket mir daz beste:
that seems to-me the best:

sô kumestu in die veste.‘
so comest-thou into the fortress.‘

Kehenis wart gar vrô,
Kehenis became wholly glad,

sîme sellin dankete he dô
to-his companion thanked he then

sînes râtes sêre.
for-his counsel sorely.

er tet die widerkêre
he made the return

und sagete daz der vrauwin.
and told that to-the lady.

sie sprach bî iren trûwen
she spoke by her faith

‚dir wirt daz wachs harte wol:
‚to-thee becomes the wax very well:

sage, wen wilt dû daz holn?‘
say, when wilt thou that fetch?‘

he sprach „biz mântag.“
he spoke „by Monday.“

‚sô schicke ich ez, ab ich mag,
‚so arrange I it, if I may,

daz ez dir danne bereit sî.‘
that it to-thee then ready be.‘

nû wârin der vrauwen drî
now were of-the ladies three

die desin rât wisten.
who this counsel knew.

die schûfen mit listen
they arranged with cunning

daz daz wachs wart bereit.
that the wax became ready.

was daz Kehenîse leit?
was that to-Kehenis sorrowful?

nein ez, wêrlîche.
no it, truly.

he quam sicherlîche
he came surely

an dem dritten tage dare.
on the third day thither.

dô wordin die vrauwen sîn geware
then became the ladies of-him aware

und worfin daz wachs obir den grabin.
and threw the wax over the ditch.

dô he daz ûf hâte gehabin,
when he it up had lifted,

dô wart he vrôlîches mûtes.
then became he of-glad mind.

‚got lône ûch allis gûtes‘
‚God reward you of-all good‘

sprach her ‚lîbe vrauwe mîn!‘
spoke he ‚dear lady my!‘

und hîz sie gesund sîn.
and bade them healthy be.

vrôlîchen kârte he dannen,
gladly turned he thence,

wen ez was im wol irgangin.
for it was to-him well passed.

dô er daz wachs habete,
when he the wax had,

dannen er dô drabete
thence he then trotted

als dicke der man tût
as often the man does

der dâ wendet sînen mût
who there turns his mind

an ein ding daz er tûn wil:
to a thing which he do will:

der besten smede besprach er vil
of-the best smiths spoke-with he many

und sûchte sie obir al daz lant
and sought them over all the land

daz her nergin einen vant,
that he nowhere one found,

der sich des undirwunde
who himself of-it undertook

und im mit ichte kunde
and for-him at all could

die sluzzele machen:
the keys make:

do vorgîng im daz lachin
then passed from-him the laughing

und der grôzen vroude ein teil:
and of-the great joy a part:

ez dûchte in ein michel unheil.
it seemed to-him a great misfortune.

Zu sîme gesellin he abir quam.
To his companion he again came.

sînen rât he dar umme nam:
his counsel he there about took:

he sprach ‚lîber geselle mîn,
he spoke ‚dear companion my,

nu bedarf ich wol des râtes dîn.
now need I well of-the counsel thy.

ich habe daz wachs gewunnen.
I have the wax won.

nû ist mir misselungen
now is to-me failed

daz ich nîman vinde
that I no-one find

der sich der sluzzele undirwinde.‘
who himself of-the keys undertake.‘

[Tristrant sprach] „vindestû keinen,
[Tristrant spoke] „(if)-findest-thou none,

ich wêne ich habe der smede einen
I believe I have of-the smiths one

der si wol gemachen kan,
who them well make can,

wiltû sie den machen lân.
(if)-wilt-thou them him make let.

der ist nâch mir obir mere
he is after me over sea

von Tintanjôl komen here
from Tintajol come hither

und ist alhie in desir stad.“
and is all-here in this town.“

Kehenis dô sêre bat
Kehenis then sorely asked

daz he on vorsûchte sân.
that he him tried straightway.

daz wart schîre dô getân:
that was soon then done:

Tristrant sande nâch dem smede
Tristrant sent after the smith

und hîz im sagen daz er nicht mede,
and bade to-him say that he not should-shun,

er quême daz wachs schauwin;
he should-come the wax to-behold;

und bat in daz er tougen
and asked him that he secretly

im die sluzzele machete.
for-him the keys made.

der smid dô sêre lachete
the smith then sorely laughed

und sprach ‚hêre, wolt ir icht stelin?
and spoke ‚lord, would you aught steal?

daz wil ich ûch nicht helfin helin,
that will I you not help conceal,

ich enmach ir nicht dar zû.‘
I make them not there to.‘

„enrûche dich, waz he dâ mete tû!“
„care-not thyself, what he there with do!“

sprach Kehenis der degin rîche:
spoke Kehenis the warrior rich:

„ich gelobe dir wêrlîchen:
„I promise thee truly:

machestû die sluzzele gût,
(if)-makest-thou the keys good,

daz he dir alsô lîbe tût,
that he to-thee so kindly does,

daz ez dir nicht darf rûwen.“
that it thee not need rue.“

dô sprach der smed ‚in trûwen,
then spoke the smith ‚in truth,

ich wil sie rechte gût machin.‘
I will them right good make.‘

do begunde abir lachin
then began again to-laugh

Kehenis der wîgand:
Kehenis the warrior:

sîn trûren dô vorswand.
his sorrow then vanished.

The Kingdom and the Ferry

XIV

Word comes that Tristrant's father is dead and princes are contending for his kingdom. Tristrant offers it to Kurneval, who refuses it and advises him to go and rule himself. First Tristrant crosses with Kurneval, dressed as squires, and through Tinas meets the queen in the orchard by the linden. Fleeing, they are chased by Antret, escape in a boat, and push it over the river with a piece of Antret's spear. Mark has the roads guarded; Tinas hides Tristrant. The queen promises riches to two penniless squires, Houpt and Plot, if they wear capes like Tristrant's and let themselves be caught, saying they are his men, that he waits at Karahes, and that the boat escape was theirs.

Under disen dingen
Amid these things

wolde volbringen
would accomplish

Kehenis der stête
Kehenis the steadfast

des he dâ willen hête.
what he there will had.

dô quam [dem edelin] Tristrande
then came [to-the noble] Tristrant

ein bote von sîme lande
a messenger from his land

und sagete ime ze mêre
and told him as tidings

daz sîn vatir tôd wêre
that his father dead were

und daz lant stunde âne herren.
and the land stood without lord.

,eine michele werre
,a great strife
ist in dînem koningrîche:
is in thy kingdom:
der vorsten etelîche
of-the princes some
wollen koning dâ sîn.
will king there be.
daz weren die vrûnde dîn,
that defend the friends thy,
dîne mâge und dîne man.‘
thy kinsmen and thy men.‘
dô he die botschaft vornam,
when he the message heard,
zu Kurnevâle he dô sprach
to Kurneval he then spoke
,dû hâst mir manchin tach
,thou hast me many-a day
gedînet flîzlîche.
served diligently.
nû habe ich ein koningrîche,
now have I a kingdom,
daz wil ich dir ze lône geben
that will I to-thee as reward give
und bin vrô‘ sprach der degen
and am glad‘ spoke the warrior
,daz ich dir sô wol gelônen mach.‘
,that I thee so well reward may.‘
Kurnevâl dâ wedir sprach
Kurneval there against spoke
„got mûze ûch ummer lônen!
„God may you ever reward!
mir en zemet nicht die krône,
to-me — befits not the crown,

sie zemet ûch selbin michel baz:
it befits you yourself much better:

ich neme or nicht.“ ‚umme waz?‘
I take it not.“ ‚for what?‘

„daz ir sie selbe solt tragen.“
„that you it yourself shall wear.“

‚ich wil dich sie lâzen haben
‚I will thee it let have

und al mîn rîche dar zû.‘ 8165
and all my realm there to.‘

„ich neme ez nicht.“ ‚daz tûstû.‘
„I take it not.“ ‚that doest-thou.‘

„nein ich.“ ‚war umme?‘
„no I.“ ‚what for?‘

„hêre, ich enkunde
„lord, I could

nicht wol koning sîn.“
not well king be.“

‚ez lêren dich die manne dîn.‘ 8170
‚it teach thee the men thy.‘

„ich kunde des vorhengin nît:
„I could it permit not:

ûwern mannen wêrez nicht lîp,
to-your men would-be-it not dear,

daz sie lên nêmen von mir.“
that they fief should-take from me.“

‚sô wil ich schaffin daz sie dir
‚so will I bring-about that they thee

alle gerne dînen.‘ 8175
all gladly serve.‘

„hêre, woldet ir mich lîben
„lord, (if)-would you me please

unde mir wol mete varn,
and me well with deal,

sô sult ir selbe komen dar
so shall you yourself come thither

und besitzen ûwir rîche
and possess your realm

und richtet koninglîchen
and judge kingly

swaz dar inne sî geschên
whatever there in be happened

und lîhet selbir ûwir lên
and grant yourself your fiefs

mit ûwir koninglîchen hant
with your kingly hand

und lîhet ouch mir ein ebinlant
and grant also to-me an even-land

dâ ich mich inne begê.
where I myself in maintain.

wolt ir dan wider obir sê
(if)-would you then back over sea

varen nach ûwerm wîbe,
go after your wife,

sô mochtet ir mir wol beschîde
so might you for-me well wisely

betin ûwir lîben holden
ask your dear loyal-men

daz sie an mich hôpten solden
that they to me hold should

biz daz ir wedir moget komen.
until that you back may come.

swen sie denne hân vornomen
whenever they then have perceived

ûwern willen genzlîche,
your will wholly,

ich wêne sie in williglîche
I believe they it willingly

tûn vrû unde spâte:
do early and late:

des volget mînem râte,
in-that follow my counsel,

wen he ist ûch gar gût.
for it is to-you wholly good.

ich habe ouch selbe den mût,
I have also myself the mind,

daz ich geêret werde dâ bî.“
that I honored become there by.“

dô sprach der hêre ‚daz sî!‘
then spoke the lord ‚that be!‘

Tristrant der kûne man
Tristrant the bold man

sîn ding dô schicken began
his thing then to-arrange began

als her zu lande wolde.
as he to land would.

dô he dar varin solde
when he thither go should

an dem andern tage,
on the other day,

dô dûchte im daz he den schaden
then seemed to-him that he the harm

nimmer mochte vorwinnen,
never might overcome,

er en gesêhe den die koninginne
he unless saw then the queen

eir sich Kurnevâl vorzige sîn.
before himself Kurneval renounced of-it.

dar umme hîz he in
there for bade he him

mit im abir varin obir sê:
with him again go over sea:

‚wen ich en sê sie nimmer mê
‚for I — see her never more

swen ich dîner nicht en habe:
whenever I of-thee not — have:

daz ist mîn allir grôste clage‘
that is my of-all greatest lament‘

sprach der helt wîse
spoke the hero wise

und sagete Kehenîse
and told Kehenis

swaz he tûn solde
what he do should

und bat sîne [lîben] holden
and asked his [dear] loyal-men

die mit im woldin varen
who with him would go

daz sie alle blebin dâr
that they all remained there

biz daz he wedir quême,
until that he back should-come,

wie gerne her sie denne nême:
how gladly he them then would-take:

‚dar zû solt ir sîn bereit.‘
‚there to shall you be ready.‘

dô fûr der hêre gemeit
then went the lord glad

sînen weg mit Kurnevâle
his way with Kurneval

(des nam sie michel hâle)
(of-it took they great secrecy)

nâch der koninginne.
after the queen.

do geschûfen die jungelinge
then disguised the youths

an al iren gebêrin
in all their bearings

und mit cleidern, als sie wêren
and with clothes, as-if they were

zwêne varende knappen:
two traveling squires:

zwô rôte korze kappen
two red short capes

trûgen die garzûne.
wore the lads.

in wârin die schapperûne
to-them were the hoods

von gelwem fritschâle.
of yellow frieze.

Tristrant mit Kurnevâle
Tristrant with Kurneval

abir hin zu Lîtân quam.
again hence to Litan came.

dô vant der wundirlîche man
then found the wondrous man

Tînas dâ heime:
Tinas there at-home:

daz was im nicht leide.
that was to-him not sorrowful.

Do entbôt der hêre Tristrant
Then sent-word the lord Tristrant

bî Tînase dâ her in vant
by Tinas where he him found

sîner vrauwin daz mêre,
to-his lady the tidings,

daz he [zu lande] komen wêre
that he [to land] come were

und wolde sie gerne sên,
and would her gladly see,

daz sie daz lîze geschên
that she that let happen

in dem bômgartin;
in the orchard;

dâr sîn der koning warte
where of-him the king waited

oben ûf der linden:
above upon the linden:

dâ solde sie on vinden.
there should she him find.

Tînas sagete daz der vrawin.
Tinas told that to-the lady.

des nachtis quam sie tougen
of-the night came she secretly

dare zû Tristranden.
thither to Tristrant.

mit dem wîgande
with the warrior

was sie biz an den morgen:
was she until to the morning:

dâ lâgen sie mit sorgen
there lay they with cares

biz sie sich musten scheiden.
until they themselves must part.

des was in grôzer leide
of-it was in great sorrow

die schône koninginne,
the fair queen,

daz die jungelinge
that the youths

sô schîre von ir kârtin.
so soon from her turned.

nû îletin sie beide harte
now hastened they both hard

wedir zû den schiffen.
back to the ships.

dô quâmen sie geslichen
then came they stealing

von Tintanjôl sô verre,
from Tintajol so far,

daz Tristrant der herre
that Tristrant the lord

wânde wol irgangen sîn.
thought well escaped to-be.

dô sante der veige Parlasîn
then sent the doomed Parlasin

den leidigen Antrêtin dare,
the loathsome Antret thither,

dâr he sîn wart geware
where he of-him became aware

und begunde in jagin alzuhant.
and began him to-hunt all-at-once.

dô vlôch der hêre Tristrant
then fled the lord Tristrant

den zagin vil ungerne;
the coward very ungladly;

ez enwas in nicht ze emperne,
it was to-them not to forgo,

wen sie hâtin keine wer;
for they had no defense;

îdoch mit schilde und mit sper
yet with shield and with spear

sô jagete sie Antrêt der zage:
so hunted them Antret the coward:

daz was sîn rûwe und sîn clage,
that was his grief and his lament,

daz he mit im nicht enmochte vechte.
that he with him not might fight.

sô ted her al rechte
so did he all rightly

daz her vriste sîn lebin.
that he preserved his life.

he vlôch sînen nebin
he fled his cousin

biz zu eime wezzirlîne.
until to a little-water.

deme wârin die forte sîne
to-it were the fords its

beide smal unde tîf.
both narrow and deep.

in ein schifchin he dô lîf
into a little-ship he then ran

daz he bî dem stade vant.
that he by the shore found.

andirs wêre der wîgant
otherwise would-have the warrior

nimmer komen dannen
never come thence

ungeslagin und ungefangin
unslain and uncaptured

unde Kurnevâl dar mete.
and Kurneval there with.

dô quam Antrêt geretin,
then came Antret ridden,

dô sie vûren von dem state.
when they went from the shore.

her enmochte rîten noch waten
he might-not ride nor wade

daz he den helt irslûge:
that he the hero might-slay:

he ted es doch genûge.
he did it yet enough.

dô daz schif abe vlôz,
when the ship off floated,

nâch sîme nebin he dô schôz
after his cousin he then shot

mit deme spere und miste sîn
with the spear and missed him

und schôz an daz schiffelîn
and shot onto the little-ship

daz daz schaft gar zubrach.
that the shaft wholly broke-asunder.

daz was im grôz ungemach,
that was to-him great vexation,

daz her sîn sô vermiste.
that he him so missed.

Tristrant dô mit liste
Tristrant then with cunning

begreif des schaftes ein stucke.
grasped of-the shaft a piece.

daz was ouch sîn gelucke,
that was also his luck,

wen he schôb sich dâ mit obir den vlîz:
for he pushed himself there with over the stream:

sie hâten rûdir noch sprîz:
they had rudder nor pole:

mit dem drume vûren
with the stump went

die gûten garzûne
the good lads

biz sie quâmen zû dem stade.
until they came to the shore.

do enmochte Antrêd der zage
then might Antret the coward

nergin obir daz wazzir komen:
nowhere over the water come:

des nâmen die zwêne gesellen vromen;
of-it took the two companions gain;

he hête sie andirs irslagin.
he would-have them otherwise slain.

dô lîz ez deme koninge sagin
then let it to-the king tell

Antrêt der herzoge,
Antret the duke,

Tristrant hête in abir betrogen
Tristrant had him again deceived

und die koningîn gesên;
and the queen seen;

daz wêre nûlîche geschên,
that were newly happened,

und wêre im zû komen
and were to-him to come

und hête im nâch den lîp genomen,
and had from-him nearly the life taken,

wen daz her im entvlô.
except that he from-him fled.

ûf machte sich der koning dô
up made himself the king then

mit allin die her habete.
with all whom he had.

nâch Antrêtin sie drabetin
after Antret they trotted

und sûchten Tristranden
and sought Tristrant

allenthalben in dem lande.
everywhere in the land.

Do besazte der koning zû hant
Then manned the king at once

die stîge obir al daz lant
the paths over all the land

und gebôt den hûtêren,
and commanded the watchmen,

als lîp in nû wêre
as dear to-them now were

daz lant und die ougen,
the land and the eyes,

daz sie ubir lût noch tougen
that they over loud nor secretly

nicht zogen dannen,
not should-draw thence,

ez enworde denne gefangen
it unless-became then captured

Tristrant adir ze tôde irslagin.
Tristrant or to death slain.

der koning dô drî tage
the king then three days

Tristranden sûchte,
Tristrant sought,

wan er es mit ganzem vlîze gerûchte
for he it with whole diligence cared

und alle sîne dienestman.
and all his retainers.

von den ez ouch wart getân.
by them it also was done.

nû quam ez kurzlîchen sô,
now came it shortly so,

daz Tînas solde dô
that Tinas should then

bî sîner borch der hûte pflegen.
by his castle of-the watch take-care.

dâ quam aleine der degen
there came alone the warrior

ûf Tristrande dâ er gîng.
upon Tristrant where he went.

der hêre Tînas in dô vîng
the lord Tinas him then caught

und brâcht in sînem wîbe
and brought him to-his wife

und gebôt ir bî irem lîbe
and commanded her by her life

in haltin daz in nîman sêge
him to-keep that him no-one should-see

und daz sie sîn selbe pflêge
and that she of-him herself should-take-care

gar vlîzlîche.
wholly diligently.

ich wêne gewislîche
I believe certainly

daz er gefangen solde wesen:
that he captured should be:

er enmochte anders nicht genesen,
he might otherwise not survive,

wêre er nicht dare komen.
(if)-were he not thither come.

vor wâr habe ich vornomen
for true have I heard

daz im Tînas nicht den lîp nam.
that from-him Tinas not the life took.

der koning was im sô gram:
the king was to-him so hostile:

hête er in gefangen,
(if)-had he him captured,

ez wêre im an daz leben gangen.
it would-have to-him on the life gone.

Dô was in grôzen sorgen
Then was in great cares

den âbend und den morgen
the evening and the morning

die schône koninginne
the fair queen

umme die jungelinge
about the youths

daz si worden gevangen.
that they became captured.

dô quâmen gegangen
then came going

zwêne knappen unberâten
two squires destitute

in ir kemenâten:
into her chamber:

sie hâten verspilt ir gewand.
they had gambled-away their garment.

dô sach die vrauwe ze hand
then saw the lady at once

daz in gûtes was nôt.
that to-them of-goods was need.

der ein hîz Houpt der ander Plôt
the one was-called Houpt the other Plot

und wâren zwêne varende man.
and were two traveling men.

die vrauwe sie dô sunder nam
the lady them then apart took

und frâgte, wer si wâren.
and asked, who they were.

sie sprâchen offenbâre
they spoke openly

‚wir sîn varende lûte
‚we are traveling people

unde quâmen hûte
and came today

aller êrst in die stat.‘
of-all first into the town.‘

die koninginne sie dô bat
the queen them then asked

daz sie têten ire bete.
that they should-do her request.

dô sprâchen die knapen ûf der stete
then spoke the squires on the place

daz sie daz gerne tâten.
that they that gladly would-do.

‚ich tar ûch daz wol râten,
‚I dare you that well counsel,

wen ir werdet sîn rîche.‘
for you become of-it rich.‘

„wir tûn ez gewislîche.“
„we do it certainly.“

‚wolt ir ez dan geloben mir?‘
‚would you it then promise me?‘

„en trûwen, vrauwe, jâ wir.“
„in truth, lady, yes we.“

ir trûwe lîzen sie dô schauwen
their faith let they then behold

und gelobten ez der vrauwen.
and promised it to-the lady.

clagen die begunde
to-lament she began

den knapen, wie ez stunde
to-the squires, how it stood

umme hêren Tristranden:
about lord Tristrant:

‚der ist hie in dem lande.
‚he is here in the land.

daz hât mîn hêre vornomen;
that has my lord heard;

nu enmag er nicht hinnen komen,
now may he not hence come,

er en sî gefangin adir tôd:
he unless be captured or dead:

lieber Houpt unde Plôt,
dear Houpt and Plot,

nû solt ir ûwern weg gân
now shall you your way go

unde lât ûch beide vân.
and let yourselves both catch.

man tût ûch nicht an dem lîbe.
one does to-you nothing on the body.

behaltet mir armen wîbe
keep for-me poor woman

sînen lîp und mîn êre:
his life and my honor:

dar umme solt ir ummer mêre
there for shall you ever more

gar rîchlîche leben,
wholly richly live,

ich wil ûch sô vil geben,
I will to-you so much give,

daz ir varet ummer dester baz.‘
that you fare ever the better.‘

„ez mag lîchte sîn ze laz.“
„it may perhaps be too late.“

‚nein, es ist noch zît genûg.‘
‚no, it is still time enough.‘

„saget uns solchen fûg,
„tell us such means,

wie wir ez wellen bestân
how we it will undertake

und wie wir ez ouch grîfen an!“
and how we it also grasp on!“

dô sprach sie zû den knappen
then spoke she to the squires

‚ich wil ûch gebin zwû kappen;
‚I will to-you give two capes;

die solt ir hî ane zîn
those shall you here on draw

und solt snelliglîchen vlîn
and shall swiftly flee

als ir ûz dem lande woltet gân
as-if you out-of the land would go

unde solt ûch lâzen vân.
and shall yourselves let catch.

sô ir danne gevangen sît,
when you then captured are,

sô habet sêre solchen strît,
so have sorely such dispute,

ûwer hêre sî Tristrand;
your lord be Tristrant;

der habe ûch in sîn land gesant.
he have you into his land sent.

er sî zu Karahes belebin
he be at Karahes remained

und wolde schîre sîn geretin
and would soon be ridden

nâch ûch her selbe
after you hither himself

mit drîhundert helmen;
with three-hundred helmets;

wen im sîn vater ist tôd
for to-him his father is dead

und sîne vrûnde lîden nôt
and his friends suffer distress

um sîn koningrîche.
about his kingdom.

nû sult ir wêrlîche
now shall you truly

sagen daz er schîre wil komen.
say that he soon will come.

ûch wêre vil nâ der lîb benomen
to-you would-have very nearly the life taken

alhie in dem lande.
all-here in the land.

an quêmen ûch wîgande,
on came to-you warriors,

die wolden ûch gerne hân irslagin:
they would you gladly have slain:

alsô sult ir gerichte sagen,
so shall you straight say,

die begunden vîntlîche ûf ûch zîn;
they began hostilely upon you to-move;

dô mustet ir entflîn
then must you escape

unde quêmet an ein wazzer.
and came to a water.

dô ward ez mit ûch bezzer,
then became it with you better,

do ir fundet dâ ein schif stân;
when you found there a ship stand;

dar în lîfet ir sân,
there into ran you straightway,

wen ir hêtet keine wer.
for you had no defense.

dô schôz einer mit eime sper
then shot one with a spear

in daz schif daz ez brach.
into the ship that it broke.

daz was im ein ungemach,
that was to-him a vexation,

daz her sîn verfêlet habete,
that he of-it missed had,

gar sêre er daz clagete:
wholly sorely he that lamented:

daz dûchte ûch ein michel heil,
that seemed to-you a great luck,

dô ûch des schaftes ward ein teil:
when to-you of-the shaft became a part:

dâ mit vûret ir daz wazzer nedir
there with went you the water down

und ir habet ummer sedir
and you have ever since

hie in dem lande gegangen
here in the land gone

biz ir nû sît gevangen;
until you now are captured;

und man ûch frâge sunderlingen
if one you should-ask separately

umme dise dinge,
about these things,

sô solt ir durch ûwer nôt
so shall you for your need

wol bewarn ûwern mût
well guard your mind

daz ir mit nichte wenket
that you by no-means waver

unde wol bedenket
and well consider

swaz ich ûch gesaget habe.
whatever I to-you said have.

dâ lât ûch jâ abe
there let yourselves indeed off

nîman bringen
no-one bring

mit drauwin noch mit minne:
with threatening nor with love:

daz ist ûch selbin gar gût.
that is to-you yourselves wholly good.

hât ir zwîvelhaften mût,
(if)-have you doubtful mind,

sô mûzet ir schîre tôd wesen:
so must you soon dead be:

sus moget ir genesen,
thus may you survive,

wolt ir dese rede behaldin.‘
(if)-would you this speech keep.‘

die koningîn Îsalde
the queen Isalde

gap den selbin knappen
gave to-the same squires

zwû alsulche cappen
two such capes

als Tristrandes was getân.
as Tristrant’s was made.

dannen hûbin sie sich sân
thence raised they themselves straightway

und gîngen unlange
and went not-long

biz daz sie wordin gevangin.
until that they became captured.

The Squires' Ruse and the Stone

XV

Antret questions the squires apart, threatening one and tricking the other, and both hold to the queen's story; he tells Mark so, Mark lifts the watch, and Tinas helps Tristrant home. Tristrant receives his princes' homage in his own land, stays two years, and leaves the realm in Kurneval's keeping. Back at Karahes, his wife's parents are dead and Riole has attacked Kehenis; Tristrant subdues him and storms a town, but a stone from its tower strikes his bare head. He lies a year near death and recovers shorn and unrecognizable. Riding by the sea with his sister's son, he laments that he can never see the queen again, and wishes Kurneval were there to find a way.

Dô brâchte man sie zu hove.
Then brought one them to court.

Antrêd der bôse herzoge
Antret the wicked duke

vrâgete sie, wer sie wêrin;
asked them, who they were;

die knapin sageten im die mêre
the squires told him the tidings

als sie die koningîn hîz.
as them the queen bade.

dar an er ez nicht enlîz,
there on he it not left,

er vorsûchte sie baz.
he tried them better.

zu wortzeichen sie dô daz
as tokens they then that

allem volke sageten,
to-all folk told,

wie sêre man sie jagete
how sorely one them hunted

und wie kûme sie genâsin
and how barely they survived

biz sie obir daz wazzir quâmen
until they over the water came

âne rûdir und âne sprît.
without rudder and without pole.

dar an enlîz her des nît,
there on left he it not,

her wolde sie scheiden
he would them part

und sprach zû dem einen
and spoke to the one

‚dich enhilfet nicht al dîn list:
‚thee helps not all thy cunning:

ich weiz wol wer dû bist.
I know well who thou art.

dû hâst unrecht gesaget.
thou hast wrongly said.

mîn hêre sînen zorn habet
my lord his anger has

zû dir gar freislîche:
toward thee wholly terribly:

ich gelobe dir wêrlîche:
I promise thee truly:

du mûst vorlîsen dînen lîp,
thou must lose thy life,

sagest dû nicht in desir zît
(if)-sayest thou not in this time

rechte, wie ez dar umme stê.‘
rightly, how it there about stand.‘

„mir werde wol adir wê,
„to-me may-become well or woe,

sô mag ich anders nicht gesagin,
so may I otherwise not say,

her wolle denne logene habin,
he should-want unless lies have,

der sage ich im wol vil
of-those tell I him well many

und mache sie, swie man wil.“
and make them, however one will.“

mit disem her dô wider quam,
with this-one he then back came,

den andern he ouch zû im nam
the other he also to him took

und sprach im listiglîchen zû:
and spoke to-him cunningly to:

‚wie ist dir geschên nû,
‚how is to-thee happened now,

daz du mînem hêren hâst gelogen?
that thou to-my lord hast lied?

dû hâst dich selbin betrogen:
thou hast thyself self deceived:

nû bist dû âne zwîvel tôd.
now art thou without doubt dead.

des wêre dir keine nôt,
of-it would-be to-thee no need,

hêtest dû die wârheit gesaget
(if)-hadst thou the truth said

als dîn geselle habet.‘
as thy companion has.‘

„saget er anders dan ich?“
„says he otherwise than I?“

‚jâ er.‘ „des scheme er sich!“ 8520
‚yes he.‘ „of-it let-shame he himself!“

‚warumme?‘ „daz er ein logenêre ist.“
‚what-for?‘ „that he a liar is.“

‚wê, wie haraft dû bist,
‚woe, how stubborn thou art,

daz dû anders nicht wilt sagin.‘
that thou otherwise not wilt say.‘

„jâ, wolt ir die wârheit habin?“
„yes, would you the truth have?“

‚jâ ich.‘ „die habit ir vornomen.“ 8525
‚yes I.‘ „that have you heard.“

‚ez ist anders dar umme komen.‘
‚it is otherwise there about come.‘

„nein ez, wêrlîche:
„no it, truly:

meint ir daz ich sô offenlîche
mean you that I so openly

desim volke alsô wille lîgen
to-this folk so will lie

und die lûte sô betrîgen? 8530
and the people so deceive?

daz tû ich, ist ez ûch lîp.“
that do I, (if)-is it to-you dear.“

‚nein, des enger ich nît:
‚no, it desire I not:

ich wil nicht, wen die wârheit.‘
I will nothing, but the truth.‘

„ez sî ûch lîp adir leit,
„it be to-you dear or sorrowful,

die wustet ir hûte vrû sam.“ 8535
that knew you today early likewise.“

dô lîz her die knapen stân
then let he the squires stand

und sagete deme koninge,
and told the king,

ez enwêrin nicht logine,
it were not lies,

daz dâ sageten die knappen:
what there told the squires:

,sie hâtin alsulche kappen
,they had such capes

die zwêne die ich jagete;
the two whom I hunted;

dô sie sich ze der vluchte habetin,
when they themselves to the flight had,

dô wânde ich ez wêre Tristrant.
then thought I it were Tristrant.

dô lîz der koning al zuhant
then let the king all at-once

zustôren sîne hûte
destroy his watch

und lîz die knapin gûte
and let the squires good

gein swar sie woldin
go wherever they would

als sie von rechte soldin.
as they by right should.

Dô die hûte was vorgân,
When the watch was passed,

dô half der hêre Tînas sân
then helped the lord Tinas straightway

deme [werdin] helde Tristrande
the [worthy] hero Tristrant

wedir heim zu lande.
back home to land.

dô her kein Karahes quam,
when he toward Karahes came,

drî hundert ritter her dô nam
three hundred knights he then took

mit im, die wârin gereit.
with him, who were ready.

dô vûr der hêre [wol] gemeit
then went the lord [well] glad

heim in sîn eigen lant,
home into his own land,

dô quâmen die vorsten ze hant.
then came the princes at once.

die entvîngen von im ir lên.
they received from him their fiefs.

swaz die wîle was geschên,
whatever the while was happened,

daz richte he swie her wolde.
that judged he however he would.

do beleib he mit sînen [lîben] holden
then remained he with his [dear] loyal-men

zwei jâr unde lutzel mê.
two years and little more.

Kurnevâle gab her unde lê
to-Kurneval gave he and lent

harte vele sînes gûtis.
very much of-his goods.

dô wart he abir des mûtis,
then became he again of-the mind,

daz he zu lande wolde varn.
that he to land would go.

sîn rîche hîz he bewarn
his realm bade he guard

Kurnevâl sînen trût.
Kurneval his beloved.

beide stille und obir lût
both still and over loud

bat her sîne holden
asked he his loyal-men

daz sie ûf in warten wolden
that they to him attend would

und daz sie im wêrin undirtân.
and that they to-him should-be subject.

dô hûb sich der hêre sân
then raised himself the lord straightway

zu Karahes hin wedir.
to Karahes hence back.

dô was sweher und sîn swiger
then was father-in-law and his mother-in-law

beide die wîle tôd
both the while dead

und hâte orlôges nôt
and had of-war distress

Kehenis lange gehat
Kehenis long had

unde im was vil geschat:
and to-him was much harmed:

[der grêve] Rîôle hâte in bestân
[*the count*] *Riole had him attacked*

und im grôzen schadin getân.
and to-him great harm done.

Nû quam Tristrant wedir dô:
Now came Tristrant back then:

des ward Kehenis vil vrô
of-it became Kehenis very glad

und ouch al die sîne;
and also all the his;

joch was sînem wîbe
even was to-his wife

gar lîp daz he was komen.
wholly dear that he was come.

dô hâte Tristrant vornomen,
then had Tristrant heard,

waz Kehenîse was getân.
what to-Kehenis was done.

sîne boten sante her sân
his messengers sent he straightway

zû den hêren in die lant.
to the lords in the lands.

dô quam im manch wîgant
then came to-him many-a warrior

zu sîner samenunge.
to his gathering.

dô wart abir betwungen
then was again subdued

grâve Rîôle und sîne frûnt,
count Riole and his friends,

daz sie abir in korzir stunt
that they again in short hour

bûzten ire schulde.
atoned their guilt.

nâch des hêren hulde,
after the lord's favor,

wie er gedingen mochte!
how he bargain might!

Tristrant dô abir sôchte
Tristrant then again sought

eine stat, von der ez quam,
a town, from which it came,

daz Kehenis den schaden nam.
that Kehenis the harm took.

daz rach an ir der helt balt:
that avenged on it the hero bold:

he gewan sie schiere mit gewalt
he won it soon with force

und brante sie an dem selbin tage.
and burned it on the same day.

dô mochte rûwen sie der schade
then might rue them the harm

den Kehenis hâte genomen.
which Kehenis had taken.

dô sie in die stad wârin komen,
when they into the town were come,

dô lach dâ ein torm inne;
then lay there a tower within;

do enwolden nicht dingen
then would not bargain

die des tormes hûten.
those-who the tower guarded.

Tristrande deme gûten
to-Tristrant the good

was sin helm abe bundin
was his helmet off bound

in den selbin stundin,
in the same hours,

dô sie den torm nicht woldin gebin.
when they the tower not would give.

in zorne sûchte in dô der degin.
in anger sought it then the warrior.

den helm her nicht ûf bant.
the helmet he not up bound.

dô wart er geworfin ze hant
then was he struck at once

mit einem laststeine
with a heavy-stone

daz man den held reine
that one the hero pure

trûg dannen vor tôd.
carried thence for dead.

îdoch gewan mit grôzir nôd
yet won with great distress

Kehenis in daz hûs abe.
Kehenis from-them the house off.

dô wart in der worf zu schadin
then became to-them the throw to harm

daz ir keiner genas.
that of-them none survived.

swaz îr dar ûf was,
whatever of-them there upon was,

sie wordin alle irhangin:
they became all hanged:

dô was ez in obele irgangin.
then was it to-them ill passed.

Der hêre Tristrant dô gelach
The lord Tristrant then lay

daz he nicht hôrte noch sach,
that he not heard nor saw,

noch kein lit regete noch rûrte.
nor any limb stirred nor moved.

den helt man dô vûrte
the hero one then carried

mit grôzir clage heim.
with great lament home.

dô wânde ir nichein
then thought of-them none

daz he mochte genesin.
that he might survive.

Kehenis sprach ‚sal he tôd wesin,
Kehenis spoke ‚(if)-shall he dead be,

daz vorwinne ich nimmirmêre.‘
that overcome I nevermore.‘

he weinete rechte sêre
he wept right sorely

mit samt im alle sîne man.
together with him all his men.

Kehenis im dô gewan
Kehenis for-him then got

arzte die in bundin
physicians who him bound

und heiletin sîne wundin.
and healed his wounds.

abe schuren sie im sîn hâr.
off shore they from-him his hair.

dô was he mê denne ein jâr
then was he more than a year

daz he vil kûme genas.
that he very barely recovered.

dô her wol gesunt was
when he well healthy was

daz he mochte rîten unde gân,
that he might ride and go,

dô was he andirs getân
then was he otherwise made

denne he was dâ bevorn:
than he was there before:

sîne varwe hâte he vorlorn
his color had he lost

und hâte sulch gesteltnisse,
and had such appearance,

swer ez nicht gar ebin wiste,
whoever it not wholly evenly knew,

daz her sîn nicht irkande.
that he him not recognized.

dô was von sînem lande
then was from his land

ein kind mit im dare komen,
a child with him thither come,

daz was sîner swestir sone:
that was his sister's son:

daz was im lîp, des hâte he recht.
that was to-him dear, of-it had he right.

eines tagis reit der gûte knecht
on-one day rode the good knight

beizzen und das kind mete.
hawking and the child with.

zû dem sê quam he geretin;
to the sea came he ridden;

dô sach der hêre Tristrant
then looked the lord Tristrant

kein Kurnevâles lant
toward Cornwall's land

und sprach vil stillinge
and spoke very quietly

‚owê lîbe koninginne,
‚alas dear queen,

sal ich dich nimmirmê gesên?
shall I thee nevermore see?

wie mochte daz geschên?'
how might that happen?'

daz kind daz gehôrte,
the child that heard,

der rede ez sô antworte
to-the speech it so answered

„ich hôre wunderlîche ding,
„I hear wondrous things,

ôhême“ sprach der jungeling
uncle“ spoke the youth

„war umme saltû sie nicht sên?“
„what for shalt-thou her not see?“

‚neinâ, des mag nicht schên.‘
‚no-no, it may not happen.‘

„ez mag wol.“ ‚ez en mach.‘
„it may well.“ ‚it not may.‘

„war umme?“ ‚dô ich sie nêchst sach.
„what for?“ ‚when I her last saw.

dô hâte man ez vornomen,
then had one it perceived,

und enwêre nimmer dannen komen,
and would-have never thence come,

wen daz es gelucke wîlt:
except that it luck governed:

ein mîn frûnd mich behîlt
a my friend me kept

und brâchte mich dannen.
and brought me thence.

dô wâren wir gegangen
then were we gone

als zwêne garzûne,
as two lads,

und ergêng kûme.
and escaped barely.

dâ vor man mich ouch vornam,
there before one me also perceived,

dô ich ouch kûme dannen quam:
when I also barely thence came:

dô gîng ich als ein pilgerîm:
then went I as a pilgrim:

nu enmag des nicht mêr gesîn.
now may it not more be.

man ist des nu wordin gewar,
one is of-it now become aware,

und getar nicht mêr komen dar
and dare not more come thither

leidir, dâ ich sie gesî.
alas, where I her might-see.

hête ich Kurnevâlin hî, 8690
(if)-had I Kurneval here,

der rîte zwâre dar zû,
he would-counsel truly there to,

waz ich dar umme mochte tû
what I there for might do

daz ez nîman wiste:
that it no-one knew:

er kan vil hubscher liste.‘
he can very courtly cunning.‘

The Fool

XVI

His sister's son advises him to go as a fool. A merchant of Tintajol takes him for one and carries him there, where he clowns before Mark, chases Antret, and tells the court openly that the queen loves him. He gives her a cheese he has carried for a week; she strikes him, and he reveals himself with her ring. She has a bed made for him under the stairs of her chamber, and for three weeks he comes to her by night, until two chamberlains discover it and set an ambush. He bids her farewell, telling her to do whatever a messenger bearing the ring asks, and leaves with his club raised; the watchmen dare not touch him, and he gets home unharmed.

„ôhême," sprach daz kindelîn
„uncle," spoke the little-child

„du enmachst sie nâch dem willen dîn
„thou mayst her after the will thy

nî baz gesên alsô nû."
never better see than now."

‚wie quême daz?' „dâ bistû
‚how would-come that?' „there art-thou

andirs getân den hîr bevorn:
otherwise made than here before:

dir ist daz hâr abe geschorn.
from-thee is the hair off shorn.

swer dich eir hête irkant,
whoever thee before had known,

dû wordest denne im genant,
thou wert unless to-him named,

sô weiz her nicht, wer dû bist.
so knows he not, who thou art.

nû soldest dû mit dîner list
now shouldst thou with thy cunning

aleine dar hin gân
alone thither hence go

und einen kogilroc nemen an,
and a fool's-coat take on,

tôrlîche dû gebâre:
foolishly thou behave:

sô wênen die hûtâre
so think the watchmen

dû sîst ein rechter affe."
thou be a real ape."

dô begunde lachen
then began to-laugh

der vil kûne Tristrand.
the very bold Tristrant.

daz kind kuste her zu hand
the child kissed he at once

gar minniglîche.
wholly lovingly.

‚nû lône dir got der rîche!'
‚now reward thee God the rich!'

sprach he ‚lîbe nebe mîn,
spoke he ‚dear nephew my,

ich wil dir ummir holt sîn
I will to-thee ever loyal be

des râtis den dû mir hâst getân.'
for-the counsel which thou to-me hast done.'

dô hûb sich der hêre sân
then raised himself the lord straightway

dâr he den selbin rog gewan.
where he the same coat got.

aleine hûb he sich dan,
alone raised he himself thence,

daz in des nicht vordrôz:
that him it not vexed:

he trûg einen kolben grôz
he carried a club great

und quam dar geslichen
and came thither stealing

zu allen den schiffen,
to all the ships,

die von Kurnevâles wâren komen.
which from Cornwall were come.

daz machte im zû der reise vromen;
that made for-him to the journey gain;

undir in he sô lange gîng,
among them he so long went,

biz in ein koufman gevîng
until him a merchant caught

der von Tintanjôle was.
who from Tintajol was.

der meinte he wêre ein getwas
he thought he were a fool

und wolde in zu gunsten brengen
and would him to favor bring

sîner vrauwin der koninginne
to-his lady the queen

und sînem hêren dem koninge.
and to-his lord the king.

ich sage ûch âne logine:
I tell you without lie:

des was Tristrant gar vrô.
of-it was Tristrant wholly glad.

mit ime nam her in dô,
with him took he him then,

dô he zu lande wolde.
when he to land would.

dô ted he als her solde.
then did he as he should.

des tôrin was he vil geil.
of-the fool was he very merry.

ûf zoug he sîn ankerseil
up drew he his anchor-rope

ûf des meres sande
upon the sea's sand

und kârte dar zu lande.
and turned thither to land.

ich sage ûch wêrlîchen.
I tell you truly.

daz Tristrant sô tôrlîche
that Tristrant so foolishly

in dem schiffe gebârte,
in the ship behaved,

daz he sie lachenes beharte.
that he them of-laughing held.

wen sie musten an in kaffen
for they must on him gape

und jâchin daz ein affe
and declared that an ape

nergin bezzir mochte gelebin.
nowhere better might live.

dô wart im kêse gegebin
then was to-him cheese given

den he solde ezzin.
which he should eat.

do enhâte he nicht vorgezzin
then had he not forgotten

sîner lîben vrauwen:
his dear lady:

den kêse stachte he taugen
the cheese stuck he secretly

in sîne kogele în
in his hood in

und brâchte in der koningîn
and brought it to-the queen

und az swaz he anders mochte haben.
and ate whatever he otherwise might have.

dô quâmen sie âne schaden
then came they without harm

kein Tintanjôl zu lande.
toward Tintajol to land.

dô vunden sie an dem sande
then found they on the sand

den koning Marken rîten.
the king Mark ride.

do enwolden sie nicht lengir bîten,
then would they not longer wait,

den tôren brâchten sie im sân.
the fool brought they to-him straightway.

he was sô affenlîch getân
he was so ape-like made

und hâte solch gebêre,
and had such bearing,

daz sie wânden er wêre
that they thought he were

gewislîche ein tôre.
certainly a fool.

sie zogin in bî den ôren
they pulled him by the ears

und begundin mit im spiln:
and began with him to-play:

des leit he von in harte vil.
of-it suffered he from them very much.

dô wolde ouch mit im toben
then would also with him rave

Antrêd der bôse herzoge,
Antret the wicked duke,

der im manch herzeleit
who to-him many-a heart's-sorrow

mit logene und mit wârheit
with lie and with truth

bevorn getân habete.
before done had.

der tôre in dô jagete.
the fool him then hunted.

dô wolde he in habin irslagin:
then would he him have slain:

daz muste ich lîchte vorclagin,
that would I easily get-over,

ab her in irsprungen hête:
if he him overtaken had:

sîne valschen [untrûwin] rête
his false [faithless] counsels

die er ûf in dicke tete,
which he upon him often did,

die wêren vergolten an der stete
they would-be repaid on the spot

und sîne bôsen tucke.
and his wicked tricks.

dô half im daz gelucke
then helped him the luck

daz he kûme von im quam,
that he barely from him came,

daz he im den lîp nicht en nam.
that he from-him the life not — took.

Der koning ûf den hof reit.
The king onto the court rode.

der tôre im vaste nâ schreit.
the fool him hard after strode.

sînen kolben he gar hôhe trûg,
his club he wholly high carried,

affenlîchen ted her genûg
ape-like did he enough

und vil manch tôrlîch spel:
and very many-a foolish play:

der ritter volgeten im vel
of-the knights followed him many

als he vor die vrauwe gîng.
as he before the lady went.

die koninginne in dô entvîng,
the queen him then received,

als sie einen tôren solde entvân.
as she a fool should receive.

dô gîng die tôre vor sie stân
then went the fool before her to-stand

und wolde daz sie in kuste.
and would that she him should-kiss.

die vrauwe des nicht en luste,
the lady of-it not — pleased,

wen sie nicht wuste, wer he was.
for she not knew, who he was.

dô stunt vor ir der getwas.
then stood before her the fool.

sô lîplîchen her sie ane sach,
so lovingly he her on looked,

daz der koning selbir sprach
that the king himself spoke

‚wie nû tôre? lâz stên!
‚how now fool? let stand!

saltû sô zertlîche ane sên
shalt-thou so tenderly on look

mîn frauwe?‘ „ich mûz und tar wol.“ 8805
my lady:‘ „I must and dare well.“

‚war umme?‘ „daz sie von rechte sol
‚what for:‘ „that she by right shall

mir holt gemûte zû tragin.“
to-me loyal mind to carry.“

‚dorch welche schult?‘ „daz wil ich sagin.“
‚for which cause:‘ „that will I say.“

‚sô sprich an!‘ „ich bin ir lîp.“
‚so speak on!‘ „I am to-her dear.“

‚dû spottest.‘ „hêre, nein, ich nît.“ 8810
‚thou mockest.‘ „lord, no, I not.“

‚dû tûst.‘ „nein ich entû:
‚thou doest.‘ „no I do-not:

ez komet lîchte dar zû,
it comes perhaps there to,

daz ich sie schîre minne.“
that I her soon love.“

‚wen?‘ „die koninginne.“
‚whom:‘ „the queen.“

‚mîne vrauwe?‘ „jâ, daz wîp dîn.“ 8815
‚my lady:‘ „yes, the wife thy.“

‚swîg, tôre, lâz die rede sîn!‘
‚be-silent, fool, let the speech be!‘

„ich enmag sîn nicht geswîgen.“
„I may of-it not keep-silent.“

‚sô sprich von andern wîben!‘
‚so speak of other women!‘

„jâ kan ich nicht gelîgen.“
„yes can I not lie.“

‚nû lâst dû doch logene vlîgen.‘ 8820
‚now lettest thou yet lies fly.‘

„ez ist die wârheit daz ich rede.“
„it is the truth that I speak.“

‚sie hât vor dir [gar] gûten vrede.‘
‚she has from thee [wholly] good peace.‘

„ich enweiz, ab sie hât.“
„I know-not, whether she has.“

‚sie tût dîner minne rât.‘
‚she does of-thy love without.‘

„ich bin ir doch lîp sô ir lîp.“
„I am to-her yet dear as her life.“

‚wie mochte ein sô schône wîp
‚how might a so fair woman

an dich tôren kêren iren mût?‘
to thee fool turn her mind?‘

„hêre, ich bin ein ritter gût
„lord, I am a knight good

und habe vele dorch sie getân.“
and have much for her done.“

‚waz ist daz?‘ „ich habe bestân
‚what is that?‘ „I have undertaken

dorch sie manch erbeit
for her many-a toil

und mir ist lîp unde leit
and to-me is dear and sorrow

von ir dicke geschên.
from her often happened.

sal ich dir der wârheit jên:
shall I to-thee the truth avow:

ich wart dorch sie ein tôre;
I became for her a fool;

zût man mich hîr bî den ôren,
(if)-pulls one me here by the ears,

daz vortrage ich dorch oren willen
that bear I for her will

obir lût und stillen:
over loud and still:

sie ist mir vor al die werld lîp.
she is to-me before all the world dear.

wolt ir des gelouben nît,
(if)-would you it believe not,

ich gan doch nîman gûtîs baz:
I grant yet to-no-one of-good better:

vor sie her ûf den teppet saz
before her hither upon the carpet sat

und sach ir under ir ougen
and looked to-her under her eyes

obir lût und tougen.
over loud and secretly.

daz sach der koning alliz an,
that looked the king all on,

sîne ougen kârte he nergin dan:
his eyes turned he nowhere thence:

he muste in î ane kaffin;
he must him ever on gape;

wen he im dûchte sîn ein affe
for he to-him seemed to-be an ape

und alle die in sâhen.
and all who him saw.

îdoch etlîche wîsen jâhen
yet some wise-ones declared

beide ritter unde vrauwen
both knights and ladies

zû ein ander tougen
to each other secretly

und nicht offenlîche
and not openly

‚he sprichet untôrlîche.
‚he speaks unfoolishly.

diz merket gemeine!‘
this mark in-common!‘

„ich bin alterseine
„I am all-alone

wîser denne ir alle,
wiser than you all,

swie ez ûch gevalle.
however it to-you please.

ir sît nîdêre
you are enviers

und ûch ist gar swêre
and to-you is wholly grievous

daz ich sô gevûge bin.
that I so skillful am.

(daz was ein vromder mannes sin)
(that was a strange man's sense)

sêt, ich wil ûch daz tûn schîn,
see, I will to-you that make shown,

daz ich mit allen sinnen mîn
that I with all senses my

an mîne vrauwen dâchte,
on my lady thought,

dô ich sô verre brâchte
when I so far brought

obir sê diz dingelîn.“
over sea this little-thing.“

dô greif he in die kogele sîn
then reached he into the hood his

und zôch den kêse her vore
and drew the cheese hither forth

„ez wêre nicht gût daz ich vorlore
„it would-be not good that I should-lose

dese erbeit unde ungemach.“
this toil and hardship.“

zû der vrauwen he dô sprach
to the lady he then spoke

„nû nemet, mîn lîbe vrauwe,
„now take, my dear lady,

ich sage ûch bî mîner trûwe:
I tell you by my faith:

wêrit ir mir nicht sô lîp,
(if)-were you to-me not so dear,

ich brêchte ûch daz kleinôt nît.“
I would-bring to-you the jewel not.“

do begundin sie alle lachen
then began they all to-laugh

und sprâchin, ez wêre ein affe
and spoke, it were an ape

und ein tôre sicherlîchen.
and a fool surely.

sîne rede her wîslîchen
his speech he wisely

sprach biz an daz ende,
spoke until to the end,

do begunde her sie wenden
then began he it to-turn

daz sie alle wol swôrin,
that they all well swore,

daz sie nî tummern tôrin
that they never more-foolish fool

sâgin in keinem rîche
saw in any realm

sô rechte gemelîche.
so truly merry.

Dô der koning ûz gîng,
When the king out went,

der tôre ez sô ane vîng,
the fool it so on took,

daz man in nicht ûz en treib:
that one him not out — drove:

selbe he ouch gerne beleib.
himself he also gladly remained.

der wîle in dâ nicht vordrôz.
the while him there not vexed.

dô brach he ûf sînen schôz
then broke he upon his lap

den kêse den he hâte brâcht.
the cheese which he had brought.

den hâte he mê den siben nacht
it had he more than seven nights

in sîner kogele behaldin.
in his hood kept.

die koningîn Îsalden
the queen Isalde

bat her mit im ezzin.
asked he with him to-eat.

sie was nicht sô vorgezzin,
she was not so forgetful,

daz sie des icht getête,
that she it at-all should-do,

swie vele sô he sie bête.
however much so he her asked.

Tristrant der tôrechte man
Tristrant the foolish man

des kêses dô ein wêning nam,
of-the cheese then a little took,

sîner vrauwen he ez ze dem munde stach.
to-his lady he it to the mouth stuck.

sie slûg im einen samften slach
she struck him a soft blow

mit der hant an daz ôre.
with the hand on the ear.

‚vrauwe mîn' sprach der tôre
‚lady my' spoke the fool

‚ir slât mich al zu sêre.
‚you strike me all too sorely.

wustet ir, wer ich wêre,
(if)-knew you, who I were,

ir slûget mich sô sêre niet:
you would-strike me so sorely not:

ist ûch Tristrant icht lîp,
(if)-is to-you Tristrant at-all dear,

sô soltet ir mich nicht slân.'
so should you me not strike.'

dô vrâgete in die vrauwe sân,
then asked him the lady straightway,

waz he von ime wiste.
what he of him knew.

der tôre dô mit liste
the fool then with cunning

sagete ir hêlingen
told her secretly

gar vil der dinge
wholly many of-the things

die im mit ir wâren geschên
which to-him with her were happened

und lîz ir sên ein vingerlîn
and let her see a little-ring

daz sie im selbe hâte gegebin.
which she to-him herself had given.

dô sprach der tûrlîche degin
then spoke the dear warrior

‚vrauwe, ich bin ez Tristrant.‘
‚lady, I am it Tristrant.‘

do irkante sie in al zuhant
then recognized she him all at-once

und ward des inniglîchen vrô.
and became of-it inwardly glad.

des tôren hîz die vrauwe dô
of-the fool bade the lady then

gar vlîzlîche plegen
wholly diligently take-care

unde hîz im dô zu wege
and bade for-him then at hand

stetelîchen betten
steadily make-a-bed

undir die treppin
under the stairs

in irer kemenâtin:
in her chamber:

dâ wart her wol berâtin.
there was he well provided.

Vil wol dem tôren dô gewas:
Very well to-the fool then was:

des tagis was her ein getwas,
of-the day was he a fool,

des nachtis her sich wol vorsan:
of-the night he himself well bethought:

dicke he zû der vrauwen quam
often he to the lady came

beide spâte unde vrû.
both late and early.

gûte vûge hâte er dar zû
good skill had he there to

daz ez nîman enwiste.
that it no-one knew.

er schûf dô mit sîner liste
he managed then with his cunning

daz er sînen willen
that he his will

vorholn unde stille
hidden and still

mochte mit der vrauwen hân.
might with the lady have.

dô sô wârin vorgân
when so were passed

drî wochen, daz er quam dar,
three weeks, that he came thither,

dô wordin sîn zu hant gewar
then became of-him at once aware

zwêne kemmerêre,
two chamberlains,

daz der trugenêre
that the deceiver

minnete die vrauwen.
loved the lady.

dô sageten sie ez tougen
then told they it secretly

dren iren holden
to-three their loyal-ones

die in helfin soldin
who them help should

daz er wurde gevangen.
that he should-be captured.

dô quâmen sie gegangen
then came they going

des selbin âbendes spâte
on-the same evening late

in die kemenâten.
into the chamber.

der koning was nicht heime;
the king was not at-home;

dô lîzen sie den einen
then let they the one

bî der vrauwen bette gân,
by the lady's bed go,

und zwêne lîzen sie bestân
and two let they stand

in der kemenâtin bî der tore,
in the chamber by the gate,

und zwêne stundin dar vore
and two stood there before

und behûtin ime die wege.
and guarded for-him the ways.

ir wille was, daz sie den degin
their will was, that they the warrior

slûgin oder vîngen
should-slay or catch

swen er dannen gînge.
whenever he thence went.

Dô wart gewar der hûte
Then became aware of-the watch

Tristrant der vil gûte.
Tristrant the very good.

sîn kolben her an die hant nam.
his club he into the hand took.

dô gîng der sinrîche man
then went the sense-rich man

und besprach sîne vrauwin:
and spoke-with his lady:

dorch nîmannes drauwin
for anyone's threatening

enwolde her des lâzin nît:
would he it leave not:

sie was im holt, sô er sie lîp
she was to-him loyal, as he her dear

vor alle werld habete.
before all world had.

die hûtêre dô vorzageten,
the watchmen then lost-heart,

daz sie in nicht torsten bestân.
that they him not dared attack.

zu der vrauwen quam her gegân
to the lady came he going

und kuste sie minneglîche
and kissed her lovingly

und sprach vil jêmerlîche
and spoke very lamentably

‚nû mûze wir uns scheiden,
‚now must we ourselves part,

daz ist uns gût beidin:
that is to-us good both:

man hât mich hî vornomen.
one has me here perceived.

nu enmag ich nicht mêre komen,
now may I not more come,

leidir, da ich ûch moge sên:
alas, where I you may see:

dar umme wirt mir wê.
there for becomes to-me woe.

wuste ich, waz ich ummir tête!
(if)-knew I, what I ever should-do!

ir sult mir wesen stête,
you shall to-me be steadfast,

alsô wil ich ouch immer sîn.
so will I also ever be.

swen ûch der bote mîn
whenever to-you the messenger my

diz vingerlîn bringe,
this little-ring brings,

sô tût gar hêlingen
so do wholly secretly

swes ich ûch denne betin lâze.
whatever I you then ask let.

got mûze sie vorwâzen
God may them curse

die uns scheiden sô vrû!‘
who us part so early!‘

„der tûfil habe sie ouch dar zû!“
„the devil have them also there to!“

sprach dô die vrauwe hêre
spoke then the lady lordly

und weinete gar sêre.
and wept wholly sorely.

Tristrant gîng von dannen dô.
Tristrant went from thence then.

sînen kolbin trûg er hô
his club carried he high

als he sie dâ mit wolde slân,
as-if he them there with would strike,

ab sie on hêtin willen vân
if they him had will to-catch

die sîn gewartet habeten.
who for-him waited had.

sô gar sie vorzagetin:
so wholly they lost-heart:

dô sie in sô menlîchen sâgen gân,
when they him so manfully saw go,

do entorsten sie in nicht bestân:
then dared they him not attack:

dô her verre quam hin vore,
when he far came hence before,

dô sprungin sie im nâ ûz der tore.
then sprang they him after out-of the gate.

die eir dar inne stundin,
those-who before there within stood,

zu sprechene sie begundin
to speak they began

wedir die hûtêre,
to the watchmen,

wie in sô geschên wêre,
how to-them so happened were,

daz her in wêre entgangen
that he them were escaped

ungeslagin und ungevangen:
unslain and uncaptured:

des musten sie alle schemen sich.
of-it must they all shame themselves.

dô wolde ez ir ietlich
then would it of-them each

ein ûf den andern legin
one upon the other lay

und begundin wedir ein ander reden
and began against each other to-speak

‚hêtestû in an gegriffen,
‚(if)-hadst-thou him on grasped,

ich enhête dir nicht entwichen.‘
I would-have to-thee not yielded.‘

„alsô hête ich dir, entrûwen!“
„so would-have I to-thee, in-truth!“

do begunde sie sêre rûwen
then began them sorely to-rue

daz sie in nicht gevîngen.
that they him not caught.

nâch im sie dô gîngen
after him they then went

als sie in gerne woldin vân.
as-if they him gladly would catch.

dô sie in abir sâgin gân,
when they him again saw go,

dô dûchte er sie sô vreislich,
then seemed he to-them so terrible,

daz abir ir iegelich
that again of-them each

dô vorzagete zu hant.
then lost-heart at once.

dô quam der hêre Tristrant
then came the lord Tristrant

wol âne schadin heim.
well without harm home.

do en mochte der hûtêre inchein
then — might of-the watchmen none

daz selbe îman vorjên,
the same to-anyone avow,

swaz in dô was geschên.
whatever to-them then was happened.

The Death of Kehenis

XVII

With the keys Kehenis and Tristrant enter Nampetenis's castle while he hunts; Kehenis's hat blows into the moat, and Tristrant amuses the ladies by shooting twigs into the wall. Riding off, they wear out their horses chasing a roe. Nampetenis finds the hat and the twigs, forces Gariole to confess, and pursues. Kehenis is killed after slaying three; Tristrant slays four and is left for dead from Nampetenis's poisoned spear. At Karahes his wife buries Kehenis and calls physicians, but only the queen can heal Tristrant, so he sends his host with the ring: a white sail if she comes, a black one if not, and the host's daughter is to watch the shore and tell him which.

Ir habet alle wol vornomen,
You have all well heard,

wie ez dô was gekomen
how it then was come

um Nampêtenis wîp,
about Nampetenis's wife,

die hâte lîp sô sînen lîp
whom had dear as his life

Kehenis der hêre,
Kehenis the lord,

und von dem grôzen sêre
and from the great pain

daz Tristrant hâte getrebin,
which Tristrant had driven,

sô was die minne belebin,
so was the love remained,

daz sie nicht vullengîng.
that it not came-to-pass.

nû merkit wie ez ane vîng
now mark how it on took

Kehenis der kûne degin:
Kehenis the bold warrior:

die sluzzele wârin allir wegin
the keys were of-all ways

in sîner hûte bereit,
in his keeping ready,

dar von in lîp unde leit
there from to-them joy and sorrow

den hêren beide sint geschach.
to-the lords both afterward happened.

dô quam ein schône jagetach
then came a fair hunting-day

daz jagen reit Nampêtenis.
that to-hunt rode Nampetenis.

dô nam der hêre Kehenis
then took the lord Kehenis

zû im sînen gesellin.
to himself his companion.

dô retin die reckin snelle
then rode the warriors swift

zû der edelin vrauwen
to the noble lady

Gariôlen tougen.
Gariole secretly.

ez was vor mitten morgen.
it was before mid morning.

gar âne alle sorgin
wholly without all cares

entslôz her die êrste porte dô;
unlocked he the first gate then;

alsô ted her die andern zwû.
so did he the other two.

dar în retin sie dô
there into rode they then

unde wâren gar vrô;
and were wholly glad;

daz wizzet sicherlîche:
that know surely:

Kehenis der rîche
Kehenis the rich

hâte einen schadehût,
had a shade-hat,

der was von blûmen vil gût.
which was of flowers very good.

den nam im der wint abe
it took from-him the wind off

und warf in hin in den grabin
and threw it hence into the ditch

dô her in die borch reit.
when he into the castle rode.

dô worden die helde gemeit
then became the heroes glad

von den vrauwen entvangen.
by the ladies received.

do enmochten sie nicht lange
then might they not long

in der borch belîben.
in the castle remain.

dô gîng von den wîben
then went from the women

Garîôle drâte
Gariole quickly

in eine kemenâte
into a chamber

mit hêren Kehenîse.
with lord Kehenis.

Tristrant der wîse
Tristrant the wise

mit den vrauwen dô besaz:
with the ladies then sat:

nu geschôz er mit dem rîse baz
now shot he with the twig better

denne îman anders dô tête.
than anyone else then did.

dô saz der helt stête
then sat the hero steadfast

und schôz ein rîs in die want.
and shot a twig into the wall.

dar nâch schôz er zu hant
there after shot he at once

abir einez in daz,
again one into that,

dar nâch baz und î baz
there after better and ever better

einez in daz ander.
one into the other.

daz nam die vrauwen wunder,
that took the ladies to-wonder,

daz er sô wol dâ mete schôz.
that he so well there with shot.

des spils vil lutzel in vordrôz:
of-the play very little him vexed:

der wand beschôz er sô vil
the wall shot he so much

und tet den frawen daz zu spil
and did to-the ladies that for play

daz er sich nicht verdâchte.
that he himself not bethought.

daz schîzen in dô brâchte
the shooting him then brought

in ein tôtlich arebeit
into a deadly toil

do er wedir kein Karahes reit.
when he back toward Karahes rode.

Dô Kehenis sînen willin
When Kehenis his will

ober lût und stille
over loud and still

mit Garîôlen begîng
with Gariole practiced

und er die frauwen ummevîng
and he the lady embraced

und sie in dâ wedir kuste
and she him there back kissed

als vil als sie es geluste
as much as her of-it pleased

und in zû ir nâhe twang,
and him to her near pressed,

do enwas in die wîl nicht lang:
then was to-them the while not long:

dô musten sie sich scheidin.
then must they themselves part.

daz was leit in beidin,
that was sorrowful to-them both,

daz sie sich schîden alsô vrû:
that they themselves parted so early:

doch was in lîbe dar zû,
yet was to-them dear there to,

daz ir wille was irgân.
that their will was come-about.

orlop nâmen sie sân
leave took they straightway

Kehenis und Tristrant.
Kehenis and Tristrant.

die borch rûmeten sie zu hant
the castle left they at once

und slozzin die porten wedir zû.
and locked the gates back to.

dannen retin sie beide dô
thence rode they both then

dorch ein holz, nicht lang.
through a wood, not long.

ein rêlîn dâ vor in sprang
a little-roe there before them sprang

obir die strâzen:
over the road:

do enwolden sie des nicht lâzen,
then would they it not leave,

sie gevîngen daz rêlîn.
they unless-caught the little-roe.

von ungelucke ez muste geschîn,
from misfortune it must happen,

daz sie ez nicht enmochtin vân:
that they it not might catch:

dô wolden sie ez âne zwîvel hân
then would they it without doubt have

und jagetin daz sô lange,
and hunted it so long,

eir wen ez wart gevangin,
before than it was caught,

daz in die ros wordin krang
that to-them the horses became weak

und von lîbe rechte slang:
and from body right lean:

sie wolden vil nâ sîn erlegen.
they would very near be foundered.

eir sie wedir quâmen ze wege,
before they back came to way,

Nampêtenis quam zu hûs.
Nampetenis came to house.

selbe entslôz he die clûs
himself unlocked he the cell

dar sîn wîp inne lach
where his wife within lay

beide nacht unde tach
both night and day

als ab sie wêre gevangin.
as if she were captive.

nâch im dorfte ir nicht irlangin
after him needed to-her not to-long

biz her wedir quême
until he back should-come

und rechte vornême
and rightly should-perceive

swaz sie hête getân.
whatever she had done.

do her in die borch solde gân,
when he into the castle should go,

dô irhûb sich ir schade,
then raised itself their harm,

wen her sach in dem grabin
for he saw in the ditch

legin Kehenîses hût.
lie Kehenis's hat.

dô wunderte [sêre] den helt gût,
then wondered [sorely] the hero good,

wie der hût quême dare.
how the hat came thither.

dô gîng he unde nam ware,
then went he and took heed,

waz die vrauwin tâtin.
what the ladies did.

boben in der kemenâtin,
above in the chamber,

dâ sach he daz rîs steckin
there saw he the twig stick

daz Tristrant der kûne recke
which Tristrant the bold warrior

hâte geschozzin in die want.
had shot into the wall.

do gedâchte der wîgant
then thought the warrior

‚diz schîzen nîman kan
‚this shooting no-one can

wen Tristrant der eine man:
but Tristrant the one man:

her hât ez sicherlîche getân‘
he has it surely done‘

und dâchte an sînem mûte sân,
and thought in his mind straightway,

Kehenis wêre mit im dâr;
Kehenis were with him there;

wen he wol wuste vor wâr
for he well knew for true

daz he sîme wîbe was sô lîf
that he to-his wife was so dear

und daz he des nicht enlîz,
and that he it not left-off,

mochte he zû ir komen;
(if)-might he to her come;

sie hêtens schaden adir vromen,
they would-have-of-it harm or gain,

daz sie gerne tête
that she gladly would-do

swes sie der helt bête.
whatever her the hero asked.

Dô sprach der hêre al zu hant
Then spoke the lord all at once

‚Gariôle, hîr was Tristrant
‚Gariole, here was Tristrant

unde Kehenis dar mete!‘
and Kehenis there with!“

daz swert zucte he zu stete
the sword drew he at once

und begunde ir sêre drauwin
and began her sorely to-threaten

he sprach, zu sînen trûwen
he spoke, by his faith

sie worde von sîner hant irslagen,
she would-be by his hand slain,

adir sie muste im rechte sagen.
or she must him rightly tell.

ab Kehenis wêre bî ir dâ.
if Kehenis were by her there.

die vrauwe vorzagete und sprach „jâ.“
the lady lost-heart and spoke „yes.“

‚waz ted he dir?‘ „he kuste mich.“
‚what did he to-thee?‘ „he kissed me.“

‚mintestû in?‘ „nein ich.“
‚lovedst-thou him?‘ „not I.“

‚dû lûgest.‘ „hêre, jâ ich tû.“
‚thou liest.‘ „lord, yes I do.“

‚wie denne?‘ „ez quam dar zû.“
‚how then?‘ „it came there to.“

‚wie quam ez?‘ „er legete mich
‚how came it?‘ „he laid me

wedir mînen willen undir sich.“
against my will under himself.“

‚wie quam er her în hie?‘
‚how came he hither in here?‘

„hêre, ich enweiz wie:
„lord, I know-not how:

he ted ez âne mînen dang.“
he did it against my will.“

der hêre ûf sîn ros sprang,
the lord upon his horse sprang,

im achte mit sîner man.
himself the-eighth with his men.

ir ieglîch sînen schilt nam
of-them each his shield took

und sîn sper an sîne hant.
and his spear in his hand.

dô îlete sêre der wîgant
then hastened sorely the warrior

nâch sînen vîanden.
after his enemies.

er wolde sîner schanden
he would of-his shame

und sînes schaden abe komen,
and of-his harm off come,

he hêtes schadin adir vromen,
he would-have-of-it harm or gain,

der im von in was geschên.
which to-him from them was happened.

do enmochten sie in nicht entvlîn,
then might they him not escape,

wen in die ros wârin irlegin.
for to-them the horses were foundered.

dô hôrte Tristrant der degin
then heard Tristrant the warrior

daz man in nâch drabete.
that one them after trotted.

zu Kehenîse her dô sagete
to Kehenis he then said

‚ich wêne, wir werdin hîr bestân.
‚I believe, we become here attacked.

wie welle wir ez nû ane gân,
how will we it now on go,

daz wir unsern lîp irnerin?
that we our life save?

hîr mûze wir uns vaste werin:
here must we ourselves hard defend:

uns ist kein ding sô nôt.‘
to-us is no thing so need.‘

do gewunnen sie starken mût.
then got they strong mind.

Nampêtenis dô quam.
Nampetenis then came.

do bestunden die zwêne man
then attacked the two men

beide in und die sîne.
both him and the his.

mit michelîchem nîde
with great enmity

die zwêne sich dô werten:
the two themselves then defended:

den lîp sie gerne ernerten;
the life they gladly saved;

wen sie stundin in der nôt.
for they stood in the distress.

dô slûgin sie Kehenîse tôd:
then struck they Kehenis dead:

ouch irslûg he der wîgande
also slew he of-the warriors

drî mit sîner hande
three with his hand

eir he sîn ende nam.
before he his end took.

wie ez dô Tristrande quam?
how it then to-Tristrant came?

der helt irslûg irer vîre
the hero slew of-them four

gar wunderlîchen schîre
wholly wondrously soon

und tet ir einen ungesunt.
and made of-them one unsound.

ouch wart he selbe sêre gewunt
also became he himself sorely wounded

daz in des strîtes vordrôz.
that him of-the strife wearied.

Nampêtenis in schôz
Nampetenis him shot

mit eime geluppetin spîze
with a poisoned spear

daz sie in vor tôd lîzen
that they him for dead let

dâ ûf dem wale ligen.
there upon the battlefield lie.

dô hête sich gerne vorzigen
then would-have himself gladly renounced

Nampêtenis sîner schande
Nampetenis of-his shame

daz die kûnen wîgande
that the bold warriors

noch beidenthalp lebetin.
still on-both-sides lived.

clagende her dô redete
lamenting he then spoke

‚ich habe gerochen mînen schadin.
‚I have avenged my harm.

daz mag ich gote von himele clagen:
that may I to-God of heaven lament:

nû mûz ich alhîr tôd wesin:
now must I all-here dead be:

ich enmag nicht genesin
I may not survive

vor desir zweier holden.
from these two's loyal-men.

ich habe es sêre enguldin
I have it sorely paid-for

an mînen lîben mannen.'
on my dear men.'

trûrig reit he dannen.
sorrowful rode he thence.

Dô zu Karahes diz mêre quam
When to Karahes this news came

und ez Tristrandes wîp vornam,
and it Tristrant's wife perceived,

dô wart sie ze mâl unvrô.
then became she for good unhappy.

den hêren holte sie dô
the lord fetched she then

mit * grôzen clagen.
with (lacuna) great laments.

ouch mochte nîman gesagen
also might no-one tell

die rûwe die sie habete.
the grief which she had.

Kehenîsen sie bestatete
Kehenis she buried

mit jâmer zû der erdin.
with grief in the earth.

Tristrande deme werdin
for-Tristrant the worthy

gewan sie arzte drâte,
got she physicians quickly,

die im solden râten
who him should counsel

und heilen sîne wunden.
and heal his wounds.

dô sie den held bunden,
when they the hero bound,

do en tochte im nicht, dar zô.
then — availed to-him nothing, there to.

he was gewunt alsô,
he was wounded so,

daz in nîman hêlin mochte,
that him no-one heal might,

wen des koningis tochtir
except the king's daughter

Îsalde, koning Marken wîp,
Isalde, king Mark's wife,

die im ouch dâ vor sînen lîp
who to-him also there before his life

von geluppe ernerte.
from poison saved.

Tristrant dô begerte
Tristrant then desired

sînes wertes ûz der stad.
his host out-of the town.

der quam: sîn hêre in dô bat
he came: his lord him then asked

daz her sîn bote wêre.
that he his messenger should-be.

dô manete in der hêre
then reminded him the lord

daz he daz tete gerne,
that he that should-do gladly,

wen he was mit im verne
for he was with him far

von Tintanjôl komen dare.
from Tintajol come thither.

dô hîz he in wedir hen varin
then bade he him back hence go

und entbôt der koninginne
and sent-word to-the queen

daz sie gedêchte al der dinge
that she should-think-of all the things

die he î dorch sie getête
which he ever for her had-done

und dêchte ouch, wes he sie bête
and should-think also, of-what he her asked

dô he lest von ir schîde,
when he last from her parted,

daz sie dorch alle die lîbe
that she for all the love

zû im schîre wolde komen:
to him soon would come:

des dâchte her nemen grôzen vromen.
of-it thought he to-take great gain.

ouch sprach he jêmirlîche
also spoke he lamentably

‚wirt, dû salt vlîzlîche
‚host, thou shalt diligently

mîne lîbe vrauwe des manen,
my dear lady of-it remind,

daz ich dicke mû und schaden
that I often toil and harm

habe geleden dorch sie
have suffered for her

und daz ich was kein ir î
and that I was toward her ever

stête, daz sie des gedenke
steadfast, that she of-it think

und ire êre sô nicht krenke
and her honor so not weaken

und helfe mir daz ich genese:
and help me that I survive:

ich mûz andirs tôd wesin,
I must otherwise dead be,

sie enkome und irnere mich.
she unless-come and save me.

sage ir, daz sie trôste sich
tell her, that she renounce herself

alles daz sie dâre hât:
of-all that she there has:

unsir wirt doch gût rât
for-us becomes yet good counsel

alle die wîle daz wir lebin.
all the while that we live.

lîber wirt‘ sprach der degin
dear host‘ spoke the warrior

‚wirb mir daz mit vlîzze:
‚carry for-me that with diligence:

einen segel wîzzen
a sail white

saltû vûren her zû,
shalt-thou carry hither to,

ab mîn vrauwe sô wol tû,
if my lady so well do,

daz sie mit dir her vare:
that she with thee hither go:

belîbet sie abir dâr,
(if)-remains she however there,

daz sie nicht her komen welle‘
that she not hither come will‘

sprach der degin snelle,
spoke the warrior swift,

‚sô sal der segil swarz sîn;
‚so shall the sail black be;

und dû salt ir daz vingerlîn
and thou shalt to-her the little-ring

zu einem wortzeichen bringen
as a token bring

und salt gar hêlingen
and shalt wholly secretly

dîn zûkunft dîner tochtir sagin
thy coming to-thy daughter tell

unde heiz sie alle tage
and bid her all days

bî dem stade sên nâch dir
by the shore look after thee

daz sie daz moge sagin mir,
that she that may tell me,

wie dîn segil sî getân,
how thy sail be made,

daz sie des vlîz wille hân
that she of-it diligence will have

unde nîman vorbaz jê
and to-no-one further avow

war nâch sie ûf daz mer sê.‘
where after she upon the sea look.‘

The Black Sail

XVIII

The host carries the message, and the queen leaves everything to sail with him. Tristrant's wife learns of the signal, and when the white sail appears she tells him it is not white; he dies at the word. As the town mourns and the bells ring for his vigil, the queen lands, hears the lament, goes to the bier, lies down beside him, and dies. Eilhart vouches for his story. The widow has the bodies coffined; Mark, told of the potion, regrets that he never knew, brings them home, and buries them in one grave, where a rosebush set over her and a vine over him grow together.

Der wert des allis nicht enlîz
The host of-it all not left-undone

daz im sîn hêre tûn hîz.
what him his lord do bade.

nû merkit, wie he ez ane vîng!
now mark, how he it on took!

balde he zu hûs gîng;
quickly he to house went;

sîner tochtir her daz sagete
to-his daughter he that told

swes in gebetin habete
whatever him asked had

sîn hêre Tristrant
his lord Tristrant

und gebôt ir zu hant,
and commanded her at once,

swen her komen wolde,
whenever he come would,

swaz sie dô tûn solde.
whatever she then do should.

tûre begunde he ir bevelin,
dearly began he her to-enjoin,

daz sie ez jâ wolde helin.
that she it indeed would conceal.

dannen her dô kârte
thence he then turned

und îlete gar harte
and hastened wholly hard

zû der koninginne
to the queen

und sagete ir hêlingen
and told her secretly

Tristrandes boteschaft.
Tristrant's message.

dô sie daz vingerlîn gesach,
when she the little-ring saw,

dô lîz sie man unde lant,
then left she man and land,

beide schaz unde gewant
both treasure and garment

und alliz daz sie î gewan
and all that she ever got

und fûr mit dem koufman
and went with the merchant

daz sie nicht mit ir envûrte
so-that she nothing with her carried

wen swaz gehôrte
except whatever belonged

zu irer arzdîen:
to her healing:

des enwolde sie sich nicht vorzîen
it would she herself not forgo

noch hinder ir lâzen nît.
nor behind her leave at-all.

wen he was ir sô rechte lîp,
for he was to-her so truly dear,

daz wart an desin dingen schîn:
that became in these things shown:

sie lîz dorch den willen sîn
she left for the will his

ir koninglîche êre
her kingly honor

und entrachtete ir nicht mêre.
and considered it not more.

Dô die maget sich vorwânde
When the maiden herself expected

daz ir vatir quême ze lande,
that her father would-come to land,

sie warte sîner alle tage,
she watched for-him all days,

daz sie Tristrande wolde sagin,
that she to-Tristrant would tell,

waz segils daz he habete.
what of-sail that he had.

ich enweiz wer ez dô sagete
I know-not who it then told

Tristrandes wîbe.
to-Tristrant's wife.

die gebôt ir bî irem lîbe,
she commanded her by her life,

swen sie vornême
whenever she perceived

daz ir vatir quême,
that her father came,

daz sie ir zu hant sagete,
that she to-her at once should-tell,

waz segils er habete,
what of-sail he had,

und ez Tristrande hêle
and it from-Tristrant should-conceal

ê ir vater quême:
before her father came:

her mochte es lîchte nemen schaden. 9355
he might of-it easily take harm.

dô sie quam zû dem stade,
when she came to the shore,

dô sach sie verne ûf dem sê
then saw she far upon the sea

einen segil wîz als ein snê,
a sail white as a snow,

und segelte itzunt an den stad.
and sailed now to the shore.

des die vrauwe die maget bat, 9360
of-what the lady the maiden asked,

ich wêne sie des nicht enlîz:
I believe she it not left-undone:

swaz sô sie sie tûn hîz,
whatever so she her do bade,

daz getorste sie nicht lân.
that dared she not leave.

des quam sie wedir sân
for-it came she back straightway

und sagete ir frawen mêre, 9365
and told her lady tidings,

daz der segil wîz wêre
that the sail white were

und daz ir vatir wêre komen.
and that her father were come.

dô daz die vrauwe hâte vornomen,
when that the lady had heard,

dô sagete sie ez Tristrande,
then told she it to-Tristrant,

daz sîn wert quême ze lande.
that his host came to land.

des wart der hêre vil vrô.
of-it became the lord very glad.

ûf richte he sich dô
up raised he himself then

daz im wart ein wêning baz:
that to-him became a little better:

von deme worte he gesaz
at the word he sat-up

und vrâgete sie mit liste,
and asked her with cunning,

ab sie icht wiste,
if she aught knew,

wie der segil gestalt wêre.
how the sail shaped were.

dô loug sie leidir sêre
then lied she alas sorely

daz ez ir sît wart gar leit.
that it to-her afterward became wholly sorrowful.

âne aller slachte valscheit
without all kind-of falseness

sprach sie sô, tumlîchen,
spoke she so, foolishly,

und sagete im lugelîchen,
and told him lyingly,

der segil wêre wîz nît.
the sail were white not.

daz was deme degin nicht lîp.
that was to-the warrior not dear.

daz tet er dô wol schîn:
that did he then well shown:

he legete daz houbet sîn
he laid the head his

dô ûf daz bette nedir.
then upon the bed down.

im krachte al sîn gelide
to-him cracked all his limbs

und stracte sich der wîgant
and stretched himself the warrior

unde starp dô al zu hant.
and died then all at once.

Dô Tristrant tôd was,
When Tristrant dead was,

vor leide kûme genas
for sorrow barely survived

sîn wîb, die daz wort sprach,
his wife, who the word spoke,

dâ von im sîn herze brach.
there from to-him his heart broke.

eia! wie lûte sie dô schrê
ah! how loud she then cried

‚owê, ach und owê
‚alas, ah and alas

daz mir î sô obele geschach!‘
that to-me ever so ill happened!‘

selbe sie daz wol sach,
herself she that well saw,

daz he von iren schulden starb.
that he through her guilt died.

michel schrîen dô wart
great crying then was

in der stad gemeine:
in the town in-common:

grôze unde kleine
great and small

begunden weinen unde klagen.
began to-weep and lament.

dô wart der hêre getragen
then was the lord carried

in ein munster schône,
into a minster fair,

ein wêning vor der nône
a little before the nones

ward sîn begrebede begangen
was his burial performed

mit clagelîchen sangen.
with lamenting songs.

dô man im wachin solde
when one for-him keep-vigil should

als die vrauwe wolde,
as the lady would,

dô wart ein jêmirlîcher schal:
then was a lamentable clamor:

man lûte die glocken obir al.
one rang the bells over all.

dô die koningîn ze dem stade quam
when the queen to the shore came

und daz grôze schrîen vornam,
and the great crying perceived,

do irquam sie des vil sêre.
then was-startled she at-it very sorely.

‚owê mir nû und ummirmêre!‘
‚alas for-me now and evermore!‘

sprach sie ‚Tristrant der ist tôd.‘
spoke she ‚Tristrant he is dead.‘

sie wart wedir bleich noch rôd,
she became neither pale nor red,

noch enweinete nicht mê:
nor wept at-all more:

irem herzen was doch vil wê.
to-her heart was yet very woe.

nû merket, wie sie ez ane vîng:
now mark, how she it on took:

al swîgene sie dare gîng,
all silent she thither went,

dâ er lag ûf der bâre.
where he lay upon the bier.

dô stunt sîn wîp dâ bî zewâre
then stood his wife there by truly

und weinete sêre und clagete.
and wept sorely and lamented.

die koningîn ir dô sagete
the queen to-her then said

‚vrauwe ir solt ûf hôer stân
‚lady you shall up farther stand

und lâzit mich nêhir gân:
and let me nearer go:

ich weine in billîcher denne ir,
I weep him more-rightly than you,

des sult ir geloubin mir.
of-it shall you believe me.

he was mir lîber denne ûch.‘
he was to-me dearer than to-you.‘

die bâre entdacte sie obir lût
the bier uncovered she over loud

und ructe in ein wênig hine baz.
and moved him a little hence further.

die koningîn ûf die bâre saz;
the queen upon the bier sat;

dar mede sie nicht mê redete,
there with she not more spoke,

ûf die bâre sie sich legete
upon the bier she herself laid

rechte enebin den wîgant
right beside the warrior

unde starb ouch zu hant.
and died also at once.

Dô Tristrandes wîp gesach
When Tristrant's wife saw

daz die koninginne tôd lach,
that the queen dead lay,

vor leide sie dô kûme genas.
for sorrow she then barely survived.

vil michel schrîen dâr was
very great crying there was

von dem volke gemeine.
from the folk in-common.

wer dâ nicht mochte weinen,
whoever there not might weep,

dem was daz herze gar hart.
to-him was the heart wholly hard.

von Hôbergin her Eilhart
from Hobergin lord Eilhart

hât uns diz bûchelîn getichtet
has for-us this little-book composed

und uns der mêre berichtet,
and us of-the tale informed,

wie [der kûne] Tristrant irstarp
how [the bold] Tristrant died

und wie he geborn wart
and how he born was

und wie ez umme sîn lîp quam.
and how it about his life came.

nû saget lîchte ein ander man,
now says perhaps an other man,

ez sî andirs hîr umme komen:
it be otherwise here about come:

daz habe wir alle wol vornomen,
that have we all well heard,

daz man daz ungelîche saget:
that one that differently says:

Eilhart des gûten zûg habet,
Eilhart of-it good witness has,

daz ez recht alsus ergîng.
that it right thus happened.

nû merkit, wie ez dô ane vîng
now mark, how it then on took

Tristrandes êlich wîp.
Tristrant's wedded wife.

mit jâmer quelte sie den lîp
with grief tormented she the body

und weinete bitterlîche.
and wept bitterly.

dô hîz sie hêrlîchen
then bade she lordly

die lîchname sarken.
the corpses to-coffin.

dô quam deme koninge Markin
then came to-the king Mark

in korzin zîten mêre,
in short times tidings,

daz Tristrant tôt wêre
that Tristrant dead were

und sîn wîp, die koninginne
and his wife, the queen

umme ir zweier minne,
about of-them two's love,

die sie zusamen habetin.
which they together had.

zewâre man im sagete,
truly one to-him said,

daz hête gemachit ein trang,
that had made a drink,

daz sie sich âne iren dang
that they themselves against their will

minnetin alsô sêre.
loved so sorely.

dô clagete her ez ummirmêre
then lamented he it evermore

daz her es nicht wiste in [der] zît,
that he it not knew in [the] time,

die wîle sie habeten den lîp.
the while they had the life.

Her jach ouch jêmirlîche
He declared also lamentably

‚got weiz wol: frûntlîchen
‚God knows well: in-friendly-way

hête ich die koningîn Îsaldin
would-have I the queen Isalde

ummir gerne behaldin
ever gladly kept

und Tristrande mînen nebin
and Tristrant my nephew

dar umme, daz der degin
there for, that the warrior

stêtlîche mit mir wêre belebin.
steadfastly with me would-have remained.

daz ich in habe vortrebin,
that I him have driven-out,

daz sal mir ummir sîn leit.
that shall to-me ever be sorrowful.

ouch was ez ein grôz tôrheit,
also was it a great folly,

daz sie mir des nicht sageten,
that they to-me it not told,

daz sie getrunken habeten
that they drunk had

den unsêligen trang,
the unblessed drink,

daz sie sich âne iren dang
that they themselves against their will

sô sêre musten minnen.
so sorely must love.

‚ôwê, gûte koninginne
‚alas, good queen

und lîbe nebe Tristrant,
and dear nephew Tristrant,

ich lîze ûch lûte unde lant
I would-leave to-you people and land

und al mîn koningrîche
and all my kingdom

ummer eigenlîche,
ever as-own,

daz ir nû [wedir] wêrit gesunt!‘
that you now [again] would-be healthy!‘

der koning an der selbin stunt
the king at the same hour

nâch den tôdin obir mere vûr.
after the dead over sea went.

dicke tûre he daz swûr,
often dearly he that swore,

im geschêge nî sô leide.
to-him had-happened never so sorrowful.

dô holte her sie beide
then fetched he them both

mit im zu lande obir sê.
with him to land over sea.

ich enweiz ûch nicht sagin mê,
I know to-you not to-tell more,

wen daz sie wordin begrabin
except that they became buried

mit vil jêmirlîchen clagen
with very lamentable laments

und doch vil hêrlîche.
and yet very lordly.

ich sage ûch wêrlîche
I tell you truly

man grûb sie beide in ein grab.
one buried them both in one grave.

ich enweiz, ab ich ûch sagin mag,
I know-not, if I to-you tell may,

îdoch hôrte ich sagin alsus,
yet heard I tell thus,

daz der koning einen rôsenpusch
that the king a rose-bush

lîze setzin ûf daz wîp
let set upon the woman

und einen ûf des mannes lîp
and one upon the man's body

von eime edelin wînrabin.
of a noble vine.

dô wôchsin sie zesamen
then grew they together

daz man sie mit nicheinen dingen
that one them with no things

von ên andir mochte bringen,
from each other might bring,

man enwolde sie den zubrechin.
one unless-would them then break-asunder.

vor wâr hôrte ich daz sprechin:
for true heard I that say:

daz machte des trankes craft.
that made the drink's power.

nû habe ich [daz] alliz vullenbrâcht,
now have I [that] all accomplished,

daz von im geschrebin ist:
which of him written is:

des walde unsir heilig Crist!
of-it may-govern our holy Christ!
